Thomas Owen
a Grammer

Edward Owen

Edd Owen
April 13th
1832
London

Thomas Owen
a Grammer

Edward Owen

Edd Owen
April 13th
1832
London

THE

RUDIMENTS

OF THE

Latin Tongue:

OR, A

PLAIN and EASY INTRODUCTION

TO

LATIN GRAMMAR:

WHEREIN

The PRINCIPLES of the LANGUAGE are methodically digested both in ENGLISH and LATIN.

WITH

USEFUL NOTES and OBSERVATIONS, explaining the TERMS of GRAMMAR, and farther improving its RULES.

BY THO. RUDDIMAN, M. A.

The Twentieth Genuine *Edition*,
CAREFULLY CORRECTED AND IMPROVED.

EDINBURGH:
Printed (by Assignment from the Heirs of T. RUDDIMAN) for BELL & BRADFUTE, and J. DICKSON.

M,DCC,XC.

1607/4746.

Thomas Owen's

Book Jan.y

17 1801

Entered in Stationers Hall.



THE PREFACE.

AMONG the ſeveral Inſtructors of Youth in this Nation, many have for a long Time complained, that the two *Rudiments* of the *Latin* Tongue, commonly taught in our Schools, are many ways inſufficient in reſpect to the End propoſed by them: That the one is written wholly in *Latin*, the very Language it is deſigned to teach; that the other is defective, particularly in the *Syntax*; and that the Rules of both are often obſcure and intricate, and ſometimes falſe and erroneous. Whereupon ſome knowing Maſters of that Profeſſion, by their repeated Solicitations, prevailed with me to undertake the compiling of a new *Rudiments*, which they conceived might, in a great meaſure, be freed from the Faults and Defects of the former, and ſo

contrived as to bring down its *Rules* to the Level of a Boy's capacity, and make them enter with more Eaſe and Familiarity into his Mind. This is the End I had in view: With what ſucceſs it has been proſecuted, is a Province for others, not me, to determine. However, if any Thing inclines me to hope its Acceptance in the World, it is owing to the kind Aſſiſtance I have had from Time to Time of the above mentioned and other Gentlemen, as the Duty of their reſpective Employments would permit them. What diſcouraged me moſt in this Undertaking, was the different Opinions of *Grammarians*, with the ſharp Conteſts and Diſputes they have had about the Method of *Inſtruction*, and the moſt proper Way to communicate the *Latin* Tongue to others with the greateſt Facility and Expedition. It would be almoſt an endleſs taſk to reckon up the various *Schemes* that have been projected for that purpoſe: Therefore I ſhall engage no farther in this Subject, than as it ſeems neceſſary to give my Reader a clear and diſtinct View of the Reaſons that determined me to the Method I have followed.

I have long obſerved, that thoſe of our Country, whoſe Buſineſs it is to direct the Studies of Youth, are greatly divided about what an *Introduction to Latin Grammar* ought

properly to contain, and in what Language its Precepts ſhould be conveyed. Some are for contracting it into as narrow Limits as is poſſible, and not to burden the Memory of the Learner with any thing but what is eſſential and abſolutely neceſſary; while others contend, that this is too general, and not ſufficient to direct his Practice, without the Addition of more particular Rules. Again, though the greater Part incline to have the firſt *Principles* of *Grammar* communicated in a known Language, there are not a few, and of theſe ſome Perſons of Diſtinction, who are ſtill for retaining them in *Latin*, which, though attended at firſt with more difficulty, makes (in their Judgment) a more laſting impreſſion on the Mind, and carries the Learner more directly to the Habit of ſpeaking *Latin*, a Practice much uſed in our Schools. It appeared next to an Impoſſibility to ſatisfy ſo many different Opinions: However, the Method I have taken ſeems to bid faireſt for it. For I have reduced the ſubſtance of theſe *Rudiments* into a ſort of *Text*, and have given the *Latin* an *Engliſh* Verſion, leaving the Maſter to his own Choice and Diſcretion which to uſe. And, that none may complain that the *Text* is too compendious, I

have ſubjoined large *Notes*, which, I humbly conceive, will ſupply that Defect.

To render my Deſign of more general Uſe, I was obliged to fall in with this Expedient, which has produced one Inconvenience, namely, that the Book is thereby ſwelled to a much greater Bulk than I could have wiſhed, or ſome perhaps will excuſe; though the Reaſons are ſo obvious, that it is needleſs to relate them. I confeſs I have been larger in the *Notes* than the Nature of a *Rudiments* ſeemed to require; but as I preſume there is nothing in them but what may be uſeful either to Maſter or Scholar, and ſince it was never my Intention that they ſhould be all taught, or any of them, with the ſame Care as the *Eſſential Parts*, I thought they might the more eaſily be diſpenſed with. There is one Thing more which has conſiderably increaſed them, *viz.* the *Remarks* I have added on *Engliſh Nouns*, *Pronouns*, and *Verbs*; which I judged uſeful on a double Account: *Firſt*, As they ſerve to illuſtrate *Latin Grammar*, the firſt Notions and Impreſſions whereof we receive from the Language we ourſelves ſpeak. *Secondly*, Becauſe the greater Number of thoſe who are taught the *Latin* Tongue, reap little other Benefit from it, than as it enables them to ſpeak and write *Engliſh* with the greater

Exactneſs, I ſuppoſed it would not be amiſs to throw in ſomething in order to that End.

Having thus given a general *Plan* of my Undertaking, all I ſhall ſay of the particular Management of it is, that I have laboured all along to render every Thing as plain and eaſy as I poſſibly could, conſidering with a tender Regard for whoſe Benefit it is deſigned. I have conſulted the beſt *Grammarians* both ancient and modern, and have borrowed from them whatever I conceived fit for my Purpoſe; though, not contenting myſelf with their bare Authority, I frequently had recourſe to the Fountain itſelf, I mean, the pureſt Writers of the *Latin* Tongue. As thus I have been ſolicitous to avoid *Error*, ſo I have been cautious not to incur the Cenſure of having affected *Novelty*, and therefore have receded no farther from the common *Syſtems* than I think they have receded from Truth; retaining the uſual *Terms* of *Art*, which have ſo long obtained in the Schools, though ſometimes I have taken the liberty, as I ſaw occaſion for it, to explain them in my own way. That I might lay no more weight on the Memories of Children than they could well bear, I have reduced the *Rules* to as ſmall a Number as the ſubject would allow of, and conceived them in as few Words as was conſiſtent with

Perſpicuity; leaving it to the Induſtry of the Teacher to explain them more fully, as he ſhall find neceſſary, without which no *Rules* can be ſufficient. The *Syntax* is indeed longer than was to be wiſhed; but I frankly own that I do not ſee how it can be made much ſhorter, without either confounding its Order, or leaving out the *Elliptical Rules*. However, to remove the Objection as much as I could, I have ſubjoined a more *Compendious Syntax*, conſiſting only of a few *Fundamental Rules*, which may be taught alone, or before the other, as the Judgment and Diſcretion of the Maſter ſhall direct him.

THE RUDIMENTS OF THE Latin Tongue;

OR, A

PLAIN and EASY INTRODUCTION TO LATIN GRAMMAR.

PARS PRIMA.

De LITERIS *et* SYLLABIS.

Magister.

QUOT sunt Literæ apud Latinos?

Discipulus. Quinque et viginti; *a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.*

M. Quomodo dividuntur?

D. In Vocales et Consonantes.

M. Quot sunt Vocales?

D. Sex; *a, e, i, o, u, y.*

PART FIRST.

Of Letters *and* Syllables.

Master.

HOW *many Letters are there among the* Latins?

Scholar. *Five and twenty;* a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

M. *How are they divided?*

S. *Into Vowels and Consonants.*

M. *How many Vowels are there?*

S. *Six;* a, e, i, o, u, y.

M. Quot ſunt Conſonantes?

D. Novemdecim; *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.*

M. Quot ſunt Diphthongi?

D. Quinque; *ae* [vel *æ*] *oe* [vel *œ*], *au, eu, ei:* ut, *aetas* vel *ætas, poena* vel *pœna, audio, euge, hei.*

M. *How many Conſonants are there?*

S. *Nineteen;* b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.

M. *How many Diphthongs are there?*

S. *Five;* ae [*or* æ], oe [*or* æ], au, eu, ei: *as,* aetas *or* ætas, poena *or* pœna, audio, euge, hei.

NOTES.

GRAMMAR is the Art of ſpeaking any Language rightly; as, *Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Engliſh,* &c.

Latin Grammar is the Art of ſpeaking rightly the *Latin Tongue,*

The *RUDIMENTS* of that Grammar are plain and eaſy Inſtructions, teaching Beginners the firſt Principles, or the moſt common and neceſſary Rules of *Latin.*

The *Rudiments* may be reduced to theſe four Heads: I. Treating of *Letters.* II. Of *Syllables.* III. Of *Words.* IV. Of *Sentences.*

Theſe are naturally made up one of another; for one or more Letters make a Syllable, one or more Syllables make a Word, and two or more Words make a Sentence.

A *Letter* is a Mark or Character repreſenting an uncompounded Sound.

K, Y, Z, are only to be found in Words originally *Greek;* and *H* by ſome is not accounted a Letter but a Breathing.

We reckon the *J,* called *Joâ,* [or *Je*] and the *V,* called *Vau,* two Letters diſtinct from *I* and *U;* becauſe not only their Figures, but their Powers or Sounds are quite different; *J* ſounding like *G* before *E,* and *V* almoſt like *F.*

A *Vowel* is a Letter that makes a full and perfect Sound by itſelf.

A *Conſonant* is a Letter that cannot ſound without a Vowel.

A *Syllable* is any one complete Sound.

There can be no Syllable without a Vowel: And any of the ſix Vowels alone, or any Vowel with one or more Conſonants before or after it, make a Syllable.

There are for the moſt Part as many Syllables in a Word as there are Vowels in it: Only there are two Kinds of Syllables in which it is otherwiſe, *viz.* 1. When *U* with any other Vowel comes after *G, Q,* or *S;* as, in *Lingua, Qui, Suadeo;* where the Sound of the *U* vaniſhes, or is little heard. 2. When two Vowels join to make a Diphthong or Double Vowel.

A *Diphthong* is a Sound compounded of the Sounds of two Vowels, ſo as both of them are heard.

Of *Diphthongs* three are proper, *viz. au, eu, ei,* in which both Vowels are heard; and two *Improper, viz. æ, œ,* in which the *a* and *o* are not heard, but they are pronounced as *e* ſimple.

Some, not without Reaſon, to theſe five Diphthongs add other three; as, *ai* in *Maia, oi* in *Troia, yi* or *ui* in *Harpyia* or *Harpuia.*

PARS SECUNDA.

De Dictionibus.

M. QUOT ſunt Partes Orationis?

D. Octo; *Nomen, Pronomen, Verbum, Participium; Adverbium, Præpoſitio, Interjectio, Conjunctio.*

M. Quomodo dividuntur?

D. In Declinabiles et Indeclinabiles.

M. Quot ſunt Declinabiles?

D. Quatuor; *Nomen, Pronomen, Verbum, Participium.*

M. Quot ſunt Indeclinabiles?

D. Item quatuor; *Adverbium, Præpoſitio, Interjectio, Conjunctio.*

PART SECOND.

Of Words.

M. HOW *many Parts of Speech are there?*

S. *Eight;* Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle; Adverb, Prepoſition, Interjection, Conjunction.

M. *How are they divided?*

S. *Into Declinable and Indeclinable.*

M. *How many are Declinable?*

S. *Four;* Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle.

M. *How many are Indeclinable?*

S. *Likewiſe four;* Adverb, Prepoſition, Interjection, Conjunction.

A *Word* [*Vox* or *dictio*] is one or more Syllables joined together, which Men have agreed upon to ſignify ſomething.

Words are commonly reduced to eight *Claſſes*, called *Parts of Speech*: But ſome compriſe them all under three Claſſes, *viz. Noun, Verb,* and *Adverb*. Under *Noun* they comprehend alſo *Pronoun* and *Participle*; and under *Adverb*, alſo *Prepoſition, Interjection,* and *Conjunction*. Others to theſe add a fourth *Claſs*, viz. *Adnoun*, comprehending Adjectives under it, and reſtricting *Nouns* to *Subſtantives* only. Theſe by ſome are otherwiſe called *Names, Qualities, Affirmations* and *Particles*.

The declinable Parts of Speech are ſo called, becauſe there is ſome Change made upon them, eſpecially in their laſt Syllables: And this is what we call *Declenſion* or *declining* of Words. But the indeclinable Parts continue unchangeably the ſame.

The laſt Syllable on which theſe Changes do fall, is called the *Ending*, or *Termination* of Words.

Theſe Changes are made by what Grammarians call *Accidentia, i. e. The Accidents* of Words.

Theſe *Accidents* are commonly reckoned ſix, *viz. Gender, Caſe, Number; Mood, Tenſe,* and *Perſon*. Of theſe *Gender* and *Caſe* are peculiar to three of the declinable Parts of Speech, *viz. Noun, Pronoun,* and *Participle*; and *Mood, Tenſe,* and *Perſon,* are peculiar to one of them, *viz. Verb*: And *Number* is common to them all.

NOTE, 1. That *Perſon* may alſo be ſaid to belong to Noun or Pronoun; but then it is not properly an Accident, becauſe no Change is made by it in the Word.

NOTE, 1. That *Figura*, *Species*, and *Comparison*, which ſome call *Accidents*, do not properly come under that Name, becauſe the Words have a different Signification from what they had before.—*See Chap.* IX.

NOTE, 3. That the Changes that happen to a Noun, Pronoun, and Participle, are, in a ſtricter Senſe, called *Declenſion* or *Declination* of them; and the Changes that happen to a Verb, are called *Conjugation*.

CAP. II.

De Nomine.

M. QUomodo declinatur Nomen?

D. Per Genera, Caſus, et Numeros.

M. Quot ſunt Genera?

D. Tria; *Maſculinum*, *Fœminum*, et *Neutrum*.

M. Quot ſunt Caſus?

D. Sex; *Nominativus*, *Genitivus*, *Dativus*, *Accuſativus*, *Vocativus*, et *Ablativus*.

M. Quot ſunt Numeri?

D. Duo; *Singularis* et *Pluralis*.

M. Quot ſunt Declinationes?

D. Quinque; *Prima*, *Secunda*, *Tertia*, *Quarta*, et *Quinta*.

REGULÆ GENERALES.

1. Nomina Neutri Generis habent Nominativum, Accuſativum, et Vocativum, ſimiles in utroque Numero: et hi Caſus in Plurali ſemper deſinunt in *a*.

2. Vocativus in Singulari plerumque in Plurali ſemper, eſt ſimilis Nominativo.

CHAP. I.

Of Noun.

M. HOW *is a Noun declined?*

S. By Genders, Caſes, and Numbers.

M. How many Genders are there?

S. Three; Maſculine, Feminine, *and* Neuter.

M. How many Caſes are there?

S. Six; Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accuſative, Vocative, *and* Ablative.

M. How many Numbers are there?

S. Two; Singular *and* Plural.

M. How many Declenſions are there?

S. Five; Firſt, Second, Third, Fourth, *and* Fifth.

GENERAL RULES.

1. *Nouns of the Neuter Gender have the Nominative, Accuſative, and Vocative, alike in both Numbers: And theſe Caſes in the Plural end always in* a.

2. *The Vocative for the moſt Part in the Singular*, [*and*] *always in the Plural, is like the Nominative.*

3. Dativus et Ablativus Pluralis ſunt ſimiles.

4. Nomina propria plerumque carent Plurali.

3. *The Dative and Ablative Plural are alike.*

4. *Proper Names for the moſt part want the Plural.*

A *NOUN* is that Part of Speech which ſignifies the Name or Quality of a Thing; as, *Homo*, a Man; *Bonus*, good.

A *Noun* is either *Subſtantive* or *Adjective*.

A *Subſtantive Noun* is, That which ſignifies the Name of a Thing; as, *Arbor*, a Tree; *Virtus*, Virtue; *Bonitas*, Goodneſs.

An *Adjective Noun* is, That which ſignifies an Accident, Quality, or Property of a Thing; as, *Albus*, white; *Felix*, happy; *Gravis*, heavy.

A Subſtantive may be diſtinguiſhed from an Adjective theſe two ways: 1. A Subſtantive can ſtand in a Sentence without an Adjective, but an Adjective cannot without a Subſtantive; as, I can ſay, *A Stone falls*; but I cannot ſay, *Heavy falls*. 2. If the Word *Thing* be joined with an Adjective, it will make Senſe; but if it be joined with a Subſtantive, it will make Nonſenſe: Thus we ſay, *A good Thing*, *A white Thing*; but we do not ſay, *A Man Thing*, *A Beaſt Thing*.

A Subſtantive Noun is divided into *Proper* and *Appellative*.

A *Proper Subſtantive* is, That which agrees to one particular Thing of a Kind; as *Virgilius*, a Man's Name; *Penelope*, a Woman's Name; *Scotia*, Scotland; *Edinburgum*, Edinburgh; *Taus*, the Tay.

An *Appellative Subſtantive* is, That which is common to a whole Kind of Things; as, *Vir*, a Man; *Fœmina*, a Woman, *Regnum*, a Kingdom; *Urbs*, a City; *Fluvius*, a River.

NOTE, That when a proper Name is applied to many, it becomes an Appellative; as, *Duodecim Cæſares*, the Twelve Cæſars.

GENDER in a natural Senſe is the Diſtinction of Sex, or the Difference between Male and Female; but in a grammatical Senſe we commonly underſtand by it, the Fitneſs that a *Subſtantive Noun* hath to be joined to an *Adjective* of ſuch a *Termination*, and not of another.—Therefore,

Of Names of Animals, the *Hees* are of the Maſculine, and the *Shees* of the Feminine Gender: But of Things without Life, and where the Diverſity of Sex is not conſidered, even of things that have Life, ſome are of the Maſculine, others of the Feminine, and others of the Neuter Gender, according to the Uſe of the beſt Authors of the *Latin Tongue*.

Beſides theſe three principal Genders, there are reckoned alſo other three leſs principal, which are nothing elſe but Compounds of the three former, *viz.* the Gender *Common to two*, the Gender *Common to three*, and the *Doubtful* Gender.

I. The *Common Gender*, or Gender common to two, [*Genus commune*, or *Commune duûm*] is Maſculine and Feminine, and belongs to ſuch Nouns as agree to both Sexes; as, *Parens*, a Father or Mother; *Bos*, an Ox or Cow.

II. The *Gender common to three* [*Genus commune trium*] is Maſculine, Feminine, and Neuter, and belongs only to Adjectives: Whereof ſome have three Terminations, the firſt Maſculine, the ſecond Feminine, and the third Neuter; as, *Bonus*, *bona*, *bonum*, good. Some have two, the firſt Maſculine and Feminine, and the ſecond Neuter; as, *Mollis*, *molle*, ſoft.

And ſome have but one Termination, which agrees indifferently to any of the three Genders; as, *Prudens*, wiſe.

III. The *Doubtful Gender* [*Genus dubium*] belongs to ſuch Nouns as are found in good Authors ſometimes in one Gender, and ſometimes in another; as, *Dies*, a Day, Maſc. or Fem.; *Vulgus*, the Rabble, Maſc. or Neut.

[*We have excepted out of the Number of Genders the* Epicene *or* Promiſcuous Gender; *for, properly ſpeaking, there is no ſuch Gender diſtinct from the three chief ones, or the doubtful. There are indeed* Epicene Nouns, *that is, ſome Names of Animals, in which the diſtinction of Sex is either not at all, or very obſcurely conſidered: And theſe are generally of the Gender of their Termination; as,* Aquila, *an Eagle, Femin. becauſe it ends in* a; Paſſer, *a Sparrow, Maſc. becauſe it ends in* er. (*See p.* 16. and 19.) *So* Homo, *a Man or Woman, Maſc.*; Mancipium, *a Slave, Neut.*; Anguis, *a Serpent, Doubtful.*]

To diſtinguiſh theſe Genders, we make uſe of theſe three Words, *Hic, hæc, hoc*; which are commonly, though improperly, called *Articles*. *Hic* is the Sign of the Maſc. *hæc* of the Fem. *hoc* of the Neuter Gender; *Hic et hæc*, of the Common to two; *Hic, hæc, hoc*, of the Common to three; *Hic aut hæc, hic aut hoc*, &c. of the doubtful.

By *CASES* we underſtand the different Terminations that Nouns receive in declining: So called from *cado*, to fall, becauſe they naturally fall or flow from the Nominative, which is therefore called *Caſus rectus*, the ſtraight Caſe; as the other five are named *Obliqui*, crooked.

The *Singular NUMBER* denotes one ſingle Thing; as, *Homo*, a Man: The *Plural* denotes more Things than one; as, *Homines*, Men.

¶ Before the learner proceeds to the Declenſion of Latin Nouns, it may not perhaps be improper to give him a general View of

The Declenſion *of* Engliſh Nouns.

I. The Engliſh Language hath the two *Genders* of Nature, *viz.* Maſculine and Feminine; for Animals in it are called *HE* or *SHE*, according to the Difference of their Sex: And almoſt every Thing without Life is called IT. But becauſe all the Adjectives of this Language are of one Termination, it has no occaſion for any other Genders.

II. The Engliſh, properly ſpeaking, has no *Caſes*, becauſe there is no Alteration made in the Words themſelves, as in the Latin; but inſtead thereof we uſe ſome little Words called *PARTICLES*.

Thus, the *Nominative Caſe* is the Simple Noun itſelf: The Particle *Of* put before it, or *'s* after it, makes the *Genitive*: *TO* or *FOR* before it makes the *Dative*: The *Accuſative* is the ſame with the *Nominative*: The *Vocative* hath *O* before it: And the *Ablative* hath *WITH, FROM, IN, BY*, &c.

NOTE, 1. That when a Subſtantive comes before a Verb, it is called the *Nominative*: When it follows after a Verb active, without a Prepoſition intervening, it is called the *Accuſative*.

NOTE, 2. That the Apoſtrophus or Sign ['] is not uſed in the Genitive Plural; as, *Mens Works, the Apoſtles Creed*.

NOTE, 3. That *TO*, the Sign of the Dative, and *O* of the Vocative, are frequently omitted or underſtood.

Beſides theſe, there are other two little Words called *ARTICLES*, which

are commonly put before Subſtantive Nouns, *viz.* *A* [or *An* before a Vowel or *H*] called the *Indefinite Article*, and *THE* called the *Definite*.

A or *An* ſignifies as much as the Adjective *One*, and is put for it; as, *A Man*, that is *One Man*. *The* is a Pronoun, and ſignifies almoſt the ſame with *This* or *That*, and *Theſe* or *Thoſe*.

NOTE, 1. That proper Names of Men, Women, Towns, Kingdoms, and Appellatives, when uſed in a very general Senſe, have none of theſe Articles; as, *Man is mortal*, *i. e.* every Man; *God abhors Sin*, *i. e.* all Sins: But proper Names of Rivers, Ships, Hills, *&c.* frequently have *The*; as, *the Thames*, *the Britannia*, *the Alps*.

NOTE, 2. That the Vocative has none of theſe Articles, and the Plural wants the Indefinite.

NOTE, 3. That when an Adjective is joined with a Subſtantive, the Article is put before both; as, *A good Man*, *the good Man*: And the Definite is put before the Adjective when the Subſtantive is underſtood; as, *The juſt ſhall live by Faith*, i. e. *The juſt Man*.

III. The Engliſh hath *two Numbers* as the Latin, and the Plural is commonly made by putting an *s* to the Singular; as, *Book*, *Books*.

Exc. 1. Such as end in *ch*, *ſh*, *ſſ*, and *x*, which have *es* added to their Singular; as, *Church-es*, *Briſh es*, *Witneſſ-es*, *Box-es*. Where it is to be noticed, that ſuch Words have a Syllable more in the Plural than in the Singular Number. Which likewiſe happens to all Words ending in *ce*, *ge*, *ſe*, *&c.*; as, *Faces*, *Ages*, *Houſes*, *Maxes*. The reaſon of this proceeds from the near Approach theſe Terminations have in their Sound to an *s*, ſo that their Plural could not be diſtinguiſhed from the Singular without the Addition of another Syllable. And, for the ſame Reaſon, Verbs of theſe Terminations have a Syllable added to them in their third Perſon Sing. of the preſent Tenſe.

Exc. 2. Words that end in *f*, or *fe*, have their Plural in *ves*; as, *Calf*, *Calves*; *Leaf*, *Leaves*; *Wife*, *Wives*: But not always; for *Hoof*, *Roof*, *Grief*, *Miſchief*, *Dwarf*, *Striſe*, *Muff*, &c. retain *f*. *Staff* has *Staves*.

Exc. 3. Some have their Plural in *en*; as, *Man*, *Men*; *Woman*, *Women*; *Child*, *Children*; *Chick*, *Chicken*; *Brother*, *Brothers* or *Brethren*, (which laſt is ſeldom uſed but in Sermons, or in a burleſque Senſe.)

Exc. 4. Some are more irregular; as, *Die*, *Dice*; *Mouſe*, *Mice*; *Louſe*, *Lice*; *Gooſe*, *Geeſe*; *Foot*, *Feet*; *Tooth*, *Teeth*; *Penny*, *Pence*; *Sow*, *Sows*, and *Swine*; *Cow*, *Cows*, and *Kine*.

Exc. 5. Some are the ſame in both Numbers; as, *Sheep*, *Hoſe*, *Swine*, *Chicken*, *Peaſe*, *Deer*; *Fiſh* and *Fiſhes*, *Mile* and *Miles*, *Horſe*, and *Horſes*.

NOTE, That as Nouns in *y* do often change *y* into *ie*, ſo theſe have rather *ies* than *ys* in the Plural; as, *Cherry*, *Cherries*.

An ENGLISH NOUN is thus DECLINED:

	A,	The		The
Singular.	Nom.	*King.*	Plural.	Nom. *Kings,*
	Gen. *of*	*King,*		Gen. *of* *Kings,*
	Dat. *to* [*for*]	*King,*		Dat. *to* [*for*] *Kings,*
	Acc.	*King,*		Acc. *Kings,*
	Voc. *O*	*King.*		Voc. *O* *Kings,*
	Abl. *with*, *from*, *in*, *by*,	*King:*		Abl. *with*, *from*, *in*, *by*, *Kings.*

Prima Declinatio.

M. QUomodo dignoſcitur Prima Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum et Dativum ſingularem in *æ* Diphthongon.

M. Quot habet Terminationes?

D. Quatuor; *a, e, as, es;* ut, *Penna, Penelope, Æneas, Anchiſes.*

The Firſt Declenſion.

M. HOW *is the Firſt Declenſion known?*

S. *By the Genitive and Dative Singular in æ Diphthong.*

M. *How many Terminations hath it?*

S. *Four;* a, e, as, es; *as, Penna, Penelope, Æneas, Anchiſes.*

Penna, *a Pen,* Fem.

Sing.		*Plur.*		Terminations.
Nom. penna,	*a pen,*	*Nom.* pennæ,	*pens,*	*a, æ,*
Gen. pennæ,	*of a pen,*	*Gen.* pennarum,	*of pens,*	*æ, arum,*
Dat. pennæ,	*to a pen,*	*Dat.* pennis,	*to pens,*	*æ, is,*
Acc. pennam,	*a pen,*	*Acc.* pennas,	*pens,*	*am, as,*
Voc. penna,	*O pen,*	*Voc.* pennæ,	*O pens,*	*a, æ,*
Abl. penna,	*with a pen:*	*Abl.* pennis,	*with pens,*	*a: is,*

¶ After the ſame manner you may decline *Litera,* a Letter; *Via,* a Way; *Galea,* an Helmet; *Tunica,* a Coat; *Toga,* a Gown.

A is a Latin Termination; *e, as,* and *es,* are Greek.

Nouns in *a* and *e* are Feminine, in *as* and *es* Maſculine.

RULE, *Filia,* a Daughter; *Nata,* a Daughter; *Dea,* a Goddeſs; *Anima,* the Soul, with ſome others, have more frequently *abus* than *is* in their Dat. and Abl. Plural, to diſtinguiſh them from Maſculines in *us* of the ſecond Declenſion.

¶ In declining *Greek Nouns,* obſerve the following Rules:

1. Greek Nouns in *as* [and *a*] have ſometimes their Accuſative [with the Poets] in *an;* as, *Æneas, Æneam* vel *Æneân;* [*Oſſa, Oſſam* vel *Oſſan.*]

2. Thoſe in *es* have their Accuſative in *en,* and their Vocative and Ablative in *e;* as,

Nom. Anchiſes, *Acc.* Anchiſen,
Voc. Anchiſe, *Abl.* Anchiſe.

3. Nouns in *e* have their Genitive in *es,* their Accuſative in *en,* their Dative, Vocative, and Ablative in *e;* as,

Nom. Penelope, *Gen.* Penelopes,
Dat. Penelope, *Acc.* Penelopen.
Voc. Penelope,
Abl. Penelope.

[*As to the Dative of Words in* e, *I have followed* Probus *and* Priſcian, *among the Ancients;* Lilly, Alvarus, Voſſius, Meſſieurs de Port Royal, Johnſon, &c. *among the Moderns. And tho' none of them cite any Example, yet I remember to have obſerved three ſuch Datives,* viz. Cybele *in* Virg. Æn. XI.

768. Penelope *in* Martial, Epig. XI. 8, 9; *and* Epigone *in* Reineſii Syntag. Inſcript. Claſſ. 14. Num. 85. *But* Diomedes *and* Deſpauter *ſeem to be of opinion, that theſe Nouns have* æ *in their Dative. The Reaſon that moved the former is, becauſe they thought it incongruous, that ſeeing Nouns in* e *generally follow the Greek in all their other Caſes, they ſhould follow the Latin in their Dative only, eſpecially ſince their Ablative, which anſwers to the Greek Dative, ends in* e. *As, on the contrary, they maintain, that if ſuch Nouns have* æ *in their Dative, it muſt come from a Nominative in* a; *of which there are ſome Examples yet extant: And then they may likewiſe have their Accuſative in* am; *as,* Penelopam, Circam, *in* Plautus, Lycambam, *in* Terentianus Maurus. *Thus* Helenæ *or* Helenes, Helenam *or* Helenen, *are frequently to be met with in Poets, who alſo turn ſuch Words as commonly end in* a *into* e *in the Nominative and Vocative, when the Meaſure of their Verſe requires it. And here it may not be improper to remark, that even Greek Words in* es, *have ſometimes their Nominative and Vocative in* a, (*whence comes their Genitive and Dative in* æ:) *And, if Mr* Johnſon's *Citations are right, both* es *and* e *have ſometimes their Accuſative in* em.]

Secunda Declinatio.

M. QUomodo dignoſcitur ſecunda Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum ſingularem in *i*, et Dativum in *o*.

M. Quot habet Terminationes?

D. Septem; *er, ir, ur, us, um, os, on*; ut,

The Second Declenſion.

M. HOW *is the Second Declenſion known?*

S. *By the Genitive Singular in* i, *and Dative in* o.

M. *How many Terminations hath it?*

S. *Seven*; er, ir, ur, us, um, os, on; *as,*

Gener, a Son-in-law; *Vir*, a Man; *Satur*, full; *Dominus*, a Lord; *Regnum*, a Kingdom; *Synodus*, a Synod; *Albion*, the Iſland Albion, or Great Britain.

Gener, *a Son-in-law*, Maſc.

Sing.	*Plur.*	Terminations.
Nom. gener,	*Nom.* generi,	*er, ir, us, i,*
Gen. generi,	*Gen.* generorum,	*i, orum.*
Dat. genero,	*Dat.* generis,	*o, is,*
Acc. generum,	*Acc.* generos,	*um, os,*
Voc. gener,	*Voc.* generi,	*er, ir, e, i,*
Abl. genero:	*Abl.* generis,	*o: is.*

After the ſame manner you may decline *Puer*, a Boy; *Socer*, a Father-in-law; *Vir*, a Man, &c. But *Liber*, a Book; *Magiſter*, a Maſter; *Alexander*, a Man's Name; and moſt other Subſtantives in *er*, loſe the *e* before *r*: Thus, *Sing. Nom.* Liber, *Gen.* libri, *Dat.* libro, *Acc.* librum, *Voc.* liber, *Abl.* libro: *Plur. Nom.* libri, *Gen.* librorum, *&c.*

Dominus, *a Lord*, Maſc.

Sing.	*Plur.*	*Thus,*
Nom. dominus,	*Nom.* domini,	Ventus, *the Wind.*
Gen. domini,	*Gen.* dominorum,	Oculus, *the Eye.*
Dat. domino,	*Dat.* dominis,	Fluvius, *a River.*
Acc. dominum,	*Acc.* dominos,	Puteus, *a Well.*
Voc. domine,	*Voc.* domini,	Focus, *a common Fire.*
Abl. domino:	*Abl.* dominis.	Rogus, *a Funeral Pile.*

Regnum, *a Kingdom*, Neut.

Sing.	*Plur.*	*Thus,*
Nom. regnum,	*Nom.* regna,	Templum, *a Church.*
Gen. regni,	*Gen.* regnorum,	Ingenium, *Wit.*
Dat. regno,	*Dat.* regnis,	Horreum, *a Barn.*
Acc. regnum,	*Acc.* regna,	Canticum, *a Song.*
Voc. regnum,	*Voc.* regna,	Jugum, *a Yoke.*
Abl. regno:	*Abl.* regnis.	

REGULÆ.

I. Nominativus in *us* facit Vocativum in *e*; ut, *Ventus, vente.*

II. Propria in *ius* perdunt *us* in Vocativo; ut, *Georgius, Georgi.*

RULES.

I. *The Nominative in* us *makes the Vocative in* e; *as* Ventus, vente.

II. *Proper Names in* ius *loſe* us *in the Vocative; as,* Georgius, Georgi.

Filius hath alſo *fili*, and *Deus* hath *Deus*, in the Vocative; and in the Plural more frequently *Dii* and *Diis*, than *Dei* and *Deis*.

The moſt common Terminations of the Second Declenſion are *er* and *us* of the Maſc. and *um* of the Neut. Gender.

There is only one Noun in *ir* of this Declenſion, *viz.* *Vir*, a Man, with its Compounds, *Levir*, *Duumvir*, *Triumvir*, &c. and only one in *ur*, viz. *Satur*, full, (of old *Saturus*) an Adjective. *Os* and *on* are Greek Terminations, and generally changed into *us* and *um* in their Nominative. Theſe, with other Greek Nouns in *us*, have ſometimes their Acc. in *on*.

[We have excluded the Termination *eus* from this Declenſion, as belonging more properly to the Third; as, *Orpheus*, *Orpheos*, *Orphei*, *Orphea*, *Orpheu*: For when it is of the Second Declenſion, it is *e-us* of two Syllables, and ſo falls under the Termination *us*; *Orphe-us*, *Orphe-i*, (contracted *Orphei* and *Orphi*) *Orphe-o*, *Orphe-um*, (or *Orphe-on*) *Orphe-o*.]

Tertia Declinatio.

M. QUomodo dignoſcitur Tertia Declinatio?

The Third Declenſion.

M. HOW *is the Third Declenſion known?*

D. Per Genitivum ſingulaem in *is*, et Dativum in *i*.

M. Quot habet Terminationes ſeu Syllabas finales?

D. Septuaginta et unam.

M. Quot habet Literas finales?

D. Undecim; *a, e, o, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x*; ut,

S. *By the Genitive Singular in* is, *and Dative in* i.

M. *How many Terminations or final Syllables hath it?*

S. *Seventy and one.*

M. *How many final Letters hath it?*

S. *Eleven*; a, e, o, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x; *as*,

Diadema, a Crown; *Sedile*, a Seat; *Sermo*, a Speech; *Lac*, Milk; *David*, a Man's Name; *Animal*, a living Creature; *Pecten*, a Comb; *Pater*, a Father; *Rupes*, a Rock; *Caput*, the Head; *Rex*, a King.

Sermo, *a Speech*, Maſc.

Sing.		*Plur.*		Terminations.		
Nom.	ſermo,	*Nom.*	ſermones,	*a, e, o,* &c.	*es,*	*a,*
Gen.	ſermonis,	*Gen.*	ſermonum,	*is,*	*um,*	*ium,*
Dat.	ſermoni,	*Dat.*	ſermonibus,	*i,*	*ibus,*	
Acc.	ſermonem,	*Acc.*	ſermones,	*em,*	*es,*	*a,*
Voc.	ſermo,	*Voc.*	ſermones,	*a, e, o,* &c.	*es,*	*a,*
Abl.	ſermone:	*Abl.*	ſermonibus.	*e, i:*		*ibus.*

Sedile, *a Seat*, Neut.

Sing.		*Plur.*	
Nom.	ſedile,	*Nom.*	ſedilia,
Gen.	ſedilis,	*Gen.*	ſedilium,
Dat.	ſedili,	*Dat.*	ſedilibus,
Acc.	ſedile,	*Acc.*	ſedilia,
Voc.	ſedile,	*Voc.*	ſedilia,
Abl.	ſedili:	*Abl.*	ſedilibus.

As Sermo, *ſo moſt Subſtantives of this Declenſion in* a, o, c, d, n, t, x, er, or, ur, as, os, us; (*except their Acc. and Voc. when they are Neuters, or when they want the Plural Number.*) *Alſo* (*when they have more Syllables in their Gen. than Nom.*) *all Words in* es, *and moſt of thoſe in* is.

Of the final Letters of the Third Declenſion ſix are peculiar to it, *o, c, i, l, t, x*; the other five are common to other Declenſions, *viz. a, e, n, r, s.*

The copious final Letters are, *o, n, r, s, x.*

The copious final Syllables are, *io, do, go, en, er, or, as, es, is, os, us, ns, rs, ex.*

All Nouns in *a* of this Declenſion are originally Greek, and have always an *m* before it. There are only two Words in *c*; *Lac*, Milk; and *Halec*, a Herring. Words in *d* are proper Names of Men, and very rare. There are only three Words in *t*, *viz. Caput*, the Head; *Sinciput*, the Fore-head; *Occiput*, the Hind-head.

1. The Terminations *er, or, os, o, en,*
2. The Terminations *io, do, go, as, es, is, ys, aus, x,* and *s* after a Conſonant,
3. The Terminations *a, c, e, l, men, ar, ur, us, ut,*

} are { Maſculine. Feminine. Neuter.

But from theſe there are many Exceptions.

NOTE, 1. That for the moſt part the Genitive hath a Syllable more than the Nominative; and where it is otherwiſe, they generally end in *e, es*, or *is*.

NOTE, 2. That whatever Letter or Syllable comes before *is* in the Gen. muſt run through the other Caſes (except the Acc. and Voc. Sing. of Neuters;) as, *Thema, -atis, -ati, -ate*, a Theme; *Sanguis, -inis*, Blood; *Iter, -tineris*, a Journey; *Carmen, -minis*, a Verſe; *Judex, -dicis*, a Judge.

REGULÆ.

1. Nomina in *e*, et Neutra in *al* et *ar*, habent *i* in Ablativo.

2. Quæ habent *e* tantùm, in Ablativo, faciunt Genitivum pluralem in *um*.

3. Quæ habent *i* tantùm, vel *e* aut *i* ſimul, faciunt *ium*.

4. Neutra quæ habent *e* in Ablativo ſingulari, habent *a* in Nominativo, Accuſativo, et Vocativo plurali.

5. At quæ habent *i* in Ablativo, faciunt *ia*.

RULES.

1. *Nouns in* e, *and Neuters in* al *and* ar, *have* i *in the Ablative.*

2. *Thoſe which have* e *only in the Ablative, make their Genitive plural in* um.

3. *Thoſe which have* i *only, or* e *and* i *together, make* ium.

4. *Neuters which have* e *in their Ablative ſing. have* a *in the Nominative, Accuſative and Vocative plural.*

5. *But thoſe which have* i *in the Ablative, make* ia.

1. EXCEPTIONS in the Accuſative ſingular.

1. Some Nouns in *is* have *im* in the Accuſative; as, *Vis, vim*, Strength; *Tuſſis*, the Cough; *Sitis*, Thirſt; *Buris*, the Beam of a Plough; *Rasis*, Hoarſeneſs; *Amuſſis*, a Maſon's Rule. To which add Names of Rivers in *is*; as, *Tybris, Thameſis*, which the Poets ſometimes make in *in*.

2. Some in *is* have *em* or *im*; as *Navis*, a Ship; *Puppis*, the Stern; *Securis*, an Ax; *Clavis*, a Key; *Febris*, a Fever; *Pelvis*, a Baſon; *Reſtis*, a Rope; *Turris*, a Tower; *Navem* vel *Navim*, &c.

2. EXCEPTIONS in the Ablative ſingular.

1. Nouns which have *im* in the Accuſative, have *i* in the Ablative; as, *Vis, vim, vi*, &c. Thoſe that have *em* or *im* have *e* or *i*; as, *Navis, navem*, vel *navim. nave* vel *navi*.

2. *Canalis, Vectis, Bipennis*, have *i*: *Avis, Amnis, Ignis, Unguis, Rus*, and *Imber*, with ſome others, have *e* or *i*, but moſt commonly *e*.

3. Theſe Neuters in *ar* have *e*; *Far, Jubar, Nectar*, and *Hepar*: *Sal* alſo has *ſale*.

3. EXCEPTIONS in the Genitive Plural.

1. Nouns of one Syllable in *as, is*, and *s*, with a Conſonant before it, have *ium*; as, *As, aſſium*; *Lis, Litium*; *Urbs, urbium*.

2. Alſo Nouns in *es* and *is*, not increaſing in their Genitive; as, *Vallis, vallium*; *Rupes, rupium*. Except, *Panis, Canis, Vates*, and *Volucris*.

3. To which add *Caro, Cor, Cos, Dos, Mus, Nix, Nox, Linter, Sal, Os, oſſis*.

NOTE, That when the Genitive Plural ends in *ium*, the Accuſative frequently, inſtead of *es*, has *eis* or *is*; as, *omneis, parteis*, or *omnis, partis*, for *omnes, partes*.

Of Greek Nouns.

I. Greek Nouns have ſometimes their Genitive in *os*. And theſe are, 1. Such as increaſe their Genitive with *d*: as, *Arcas, Arcadis* vel *Arcados*, an Arcadian; *Briſeis, -eidis* vel *-eidos*, a Woman's Name. 2. Such as increaſe in *os* pure, *i. e.* with a Vowel before it; as, *Hæreſis, -eos* vel *-ios*, an Hereſy. 3. To theſe add *Sphyngos, Strymonos*, and *Panos*.

Note, That *is* is more frequent, except in the ſecond Kind, and Patronymics of the firſt.

II. 1. Greek Words which increaſe their Genitive in *is* or *os* not pure, (*i. e.* with a Conſonant before it) have frequently their Accuſative Sing. in *a*, and plural in *as*; as, *Lampas, lampadis, lampada, lampadas*; alſo *Minos, Minois, Minoa*; *Tros, Troïs, Troa, Troas*; *Heros, herois, heroa, heroas*.

2. Words in *is* or *ys*, whoſe Genitive ends in *os* pure, have their Accuſative in *im* or *in*, and *ym* or *yn*; as, *Hæreſis, -eos, hæreſim* or *-in*; *Chelys, -lyos*, a Lute; *chelym* or *-lyn*. Of Words in *is*, which have their Genitive in *dis* or *dos*, *Maſculines* have their Accuſative for the moſt part in *n* or *in*, ſeldom in *dem*, and never in *da*, that I know of; as, *Paris, Parim*, vel *Parin*, vel *Paridem*: *Feminines* have moſt commonly *dem* or *da*, and ſeldom *im* or *in*; as, *Briſeis, Briſeidem* vel *Briſeida*.

III. Feminines in *o* have *us* in their Genitive, and *o* in their other Caſes; as, *Dido, Didus, Dido*, &c. or they may be declined after the Latin Form, *Dido, Didonis, Dideni*, &c. which *Juno* (as being of a Latin Original) always follows.

IV. Greek Nouns in *s* frequently throw away *s* in their Vocative; as, *Calchas, Achilles, Paris, Tiphys, Orpheus*; *Calcha, Achille, Pari, Tiphy, Orpheu*.

V. Greek Nouns have *um* (and ſometimes *on* in their Genitive Plural; as, *Epigrammatôn, Hæreſeôn*,) and very rarely *ium*.

VI. Greek Nouns in *ma* have moſt frequently *is* in their Dative and Ablative plural; as, *Poëma, Poëmatis*, becauſe of old they ſaid *Poëmatum*, (*i. Bos* has *Boum*, and *bobus* or *bubus*.

Quarta Declinatio.

M. QUomodo dignoſcitur Quarta Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum ſingulam in *us*, et Dativum in *ui*.

M. Quot habet Terminationes?

D. Duas; *us* et *u*; ut,

The Fourth Declenſion.

M. *HOW is the Fourth Declenſion known?*

S. *By the Genitive Singular in* us, *and the Dative in* ui.

M. *How many Terminations hath it?*

S. *Two*; us *and* u; *as,*

Fructus, *Fruit*; Cornu, *a Horn.*

	Fructus, *Fruit*, Maſc.		Terminations.	
Sing. *Nom.*	fructus,	*Plur.* *Nom.*	*us,*	*us,*
Gen.	fructus,	*Gen.*	*us,*	*uum,*
Dat.	fructui,	*Dat.*	*ui,*	*ibus,*
Acc.	fructum,	*Acc.*	*um,*	*us,*
Voc.	fructus,	*Voc.*	*us,*	*us,*
Abl.	fructu:	*Abl.*	*u:*	*ibus.*

Cornu, *a Horn*, Neut.

Sing.	*Nom.* cornu,	*Plur.*	*Nom.* cornua,	*As* Fructus, *ſo* Vultus, *the Countenance*, Manus, *the Hand*, Fem. Caſus, *a Fall or Chance.*
	Gen. cornu,		*Gen.* cornuum,	
	Dat. cornu,		*Dat.* cornibus,	
	Acc. cornu,		*Acc.* cornua,	*As* Cornu, *ſo* Genu, *the Knee*; Veru, *a Spit*; Tonitru, *Thunder.*
	Voc. cornu,		*Voc.* cornua,	
	Abl. cornu :		*Abl.* cornibus.	

Nouns in *us* of this Declenſion are generally Maſculine, and thoſe in *u* all Neuter, and Indeclinable in the ſingular Number.

RULE, Some Nouns have *ubus* in their Dative and Ablative plural, *viz. Arcus*, a Bow; *Artus*, a Joint; *Lacus*, a Lake; *Acus*, a Needle; *Portus*, a Port or Harbour; *Partus*, a Birth; *Tribus*, a Tribe; *Veru*, a Spit.

NOTE, That of old, Nouns of this Declenſion belonged to the Third, and were declined as, *Grus, grūis*, a Crane; thus, *Fructus, fructuis, fructui, fructuem, fructue: Fructues, fructuum, fructuibus, fructues, fractues fructuibus.* So that all the Caſes are contracted, except the Dative ſing. and Genitive plural. There are ſome Examples of the Genitive in *uis* yet extant; as, on the contrary, there are ſeveral of the Dative in *u*.

The bleſſed Name IESUS *is thus declined:*

Sing.	*Nom.* IESUS,	*Plur. wanting.*	*Nom.*	
	Gen. IESU,		*Gen.*	
	Dat. IESU,		*Dat.*	
	Acc. IESUM,		*Acc.*	
	Voc. IESU,		*Voc.*	
	Abl. IESU.		*Abl.*	

Domus *an House*, Fem. *is thus declined:*

Sing.	*Nom.* domus,	*Plur.*	*Nom.* domus,	
	Gen. domus, *v.* -mi,		*Gen.* domorum, *v.* -uum,	
	Dat. domui, *v.* -mo,		*Dat.* domibus,	
	Acc. domum,		*Acc.* domos, *v.* -us,	
	Voc. domus,		*Voc.* domus,	
	Abl. domo :		*Abl.* domibus.	

[NOTE, *That the Genitive* domi *is only uſed when it ſignifies*, At home; domo *the Dative is found in* Horace, *Epiſt.* I. 10. 13.]

Quinta Declinatio.

M. QUomodo dignoſcitur Quinta Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum et Dativum ſingularem in *ei*.

M. Quot habet Terminationes?

D. Unam, nempe, *es*; ut,

The Fifth Declenſion.

M. *HOW is the Fifth Declenſion known?*

S. *By the Genitive and Dative Singular in* ei.

M. *How many Terminations hath it?*

S. *One, namely,* es; *as,*

Res, *a Thing*, Fem. Terminations.

Sing.	*Nom.* res,	*Plur.*	*Nom.* res,	*es,*	*es,*
	Gen. rei,		*Gen.* rerum,	*ei,*	*erum.*
	Dat. rei,		*Dat.* rebus,	*ei,*	*ebus,*
	Acc. rem,		*Acc.* res,	*em,*	*es,*
	Voc. res,		*Voc.* res,	*es,*	*es,*
	Abl. re :		*Abl.* rebus.	*e :*	*ebus.*

Nouns of the Fifth Declenſion are not above fifty; and are all Feminine, except *Dies*, a Day, Maſc. or Fem. and *Meridies*, the Mid-day or Noon, Maſc.

All Nouns of this Declenſion end in *ies*, except three; *Fides*, Faith; *Spes*, Hope; *Res*, a Thing.

And all Nouns in *ies*, are of the Fifth, except theſe four; *Abies*, a Fir-tree; *Aries*, a Ram; *Paries*, a Wall; and *Quies*, Reſt; which are of the Third.

Moſt Nouns of this Declenſion want the Genitive, Dative and Ablative Plural, and many of them want the Plural altogether.

General Remarks on all the Declenſions.

1. The Genitive Plural of the firſt four is ſometimes contracted, eſpecially by Poets; as, *Cœlicolûm, Deûm, Menſûm, Currûm;* for *Cœlicolarum, Deorum, Menſium, Curruum.*

2. When the Genitive of the Second ends in *ii*, the laſt *i* is ſometimes taken away by Poets; as, *Tugurî* for *Tugurii*. We read alſo *Aulai* for *Aulæ* in the Firſt, and *Fide* for *fidei* in the Fifth; and ſo of other like Words.

Declinatio Adjectivorum.

ADjectiva ſunt vel primæ et ſecundæ Declinationis, vel tertiæ tantùm.

Omnia Adjectiva habentia tres Terminationes (præter (*a*) undecim) ſunt primæ et ſecundæ: At quæ unam vel duas Terminationes habent, ſunt tertiæ.

Adjectiva primæ et ſecundæ habent Maſculinum in *us* (*b*) vel *er*; Fœmininum ſemper in *a*; Neutrum ſemper in *um*; ut,

Bonus, bona, bonum, good; *Tener, tenera, tenerum*, tender.

The Declenſion of Adjectives.

ADjectives are either of the Firſt and Second Declenſion, or of the Third only.

All Adjectives having three Terminations (except (a) *eleven) are of the Firſt and Second: But theſe which have one or two Terminations are of the Third.*

Adjectives of the Firſt and Second have their Maſculine in us, (b) *or* er; *their Feminine always in* a; *and their Neuter always in* um; *as,*

Bonus, bona, bonum, *good.*

Sing.				*Plur.*			
Nom.	bon-us,	-a,	-um,	*Nom.*	bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
Gen.	bon-i,	-æ,	-i,	*Gen.*	bon-orum,	-arum,	-orum,
Dat.	bon-o,	-æ,	-o,	*Dat.*	bon-is,	-is,	-is,
Acc.	bon-um,	-am,	-um,	*Acc.*	bon-os,	-as,	-a,
Voc.	bon-e,	-a,	-um,	*Voc.*	bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
Abl.	bon-o,	-a,	-o:	*Abl.*	bon-is,	-is,	-is.

(*a*) Viz. *acer, alacer, celer, celeber, ſaluber, volucer, campeſter, equeſter, pedeſter, paluſter, ſilveſter;* which are of the Third, and have their Maſculine in *er* or *is*, their Feminine in *is*, and Neuter in *e*.

(*b*) For *ſatur*, full, was of old *ſaturus*.

Tener, tenera, tenerum, *tender.*

	Sing.			*Plur.*	
N. ten-er,	-era,	-erum,	*N.* ten-eri,	-eræ,	-era,
G. ten-eri,	-eræ,	-eri,	*G.* ten-erorum,	-erarum,	-erorum,
D. ten-ero,	-eræ,	-ero,	*D.* ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris,
A. ten-erum,	-eram,	-erum,	*A.* ten-eros,	-eras,	-era,
V. ten-er,	-era,	-erum,	*V.* ten-eri,	-eræ,	-era,
A. ten-ero,	-era,	-ero :	*A.* ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris.

Adjectives are declined as three Subſtantives of the ſame Terminations and Declenſions: As in the Examples above, *bonus* like *dominus*; *tener* like *gener*; *bona* and *tenera*, like *penna*; *bonum* and *tenerum*, like *regnum*. Therefore the Ancients, as is clear from *Varro*, lib. 3. *de Anal.* declined every Gender ſeparately, and not all three jointly, as we now commonly do: And perhaps it may not be amiſs to follow this Method at firſt, eſpecially if the Boy is of a ſlow Capacity.

Of Adjectives in *er*, ſome retain the *e*, as *tener*. So *miſer*, *-era*, *-erum*, wretched; *liber*, *-era*, *-erum*, free; and all Compounds in *ger* and *fer*. Others loſe it; as, *pulcher*, *pulchra*, *pulchrum*, fair; *niger*, *-gra*, *-grum*, black.

Theſe following Adjectives, *unus*, one; *totus*, whole; *ſolus*, alone; *ullus*, any; *nullus*, none; *alius*, another of many; *alter*, another, or one of two; *neuter*, neither; *uter*, whether, with its Compounds, *uterque*, both; *uterlibet*, *utervis*, which of the two you pleaſe; *alteruter*, the one or the other; have their Genitive ſingular in *ius*, and Dative in *i*.

Adjectiva tertiæ Declinationis.

Adjectives of the Third Declenſion.

1. *Unius Terminationis.*

1. Of one Termination.

Felix, *happy.*

	Sing.			*Plur.*	
N. fel-ix,	-ix,	-ix,	*N.* fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
G. fel-icis,	-icis,	-icis,	*G.* fel-icium,	-icium,	-icium,
D. fel-ici,	-ici,	-ici,	*D.* fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus,
A. fel-icem,	-icem,	-ix,	*A.* fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
V. fel-ix,	-ix,	-ix,	*V.* fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
A. fel-ice, *vel* -ici, *&c.*			*A.* fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus.

2. *Duarum Terminationum.*

2. Of two Terminations.

Mitis, mite, *meek.*

	Sing.			*Plur.*	
N. mitis,	mitis,	mite,	*N.* mites,	mites,	mitia,
G. mitis,	mitis,	mitis,	*G.* mitium,	mitium,	mitium,
D. miti,	miti,	miti,	*D.* mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus,
A. mitem,	mitem,	mite,	*A.* mites,	mites,	mitia,
V. mitis,	mitis,	mite,	*V.* mites,	mites,	mitia,
A. miti,	miti,	miti :	*A.* mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus.

Mitior, mitius, *meeker.*

Sing.			*Plur.*		
N. miti-or,	-or,	-us,	*N.* miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora,
G. miti-oris,	-oris,	-oris,	*G.* miti orum,	-orum,	-orum,
D. miti-ori,	-ori,	-ori,	*D.* miti-oribus,	-oribus,	-oribus,
A. miti-orem,	-orem,	-us,	*A.* miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora,
V. miti-or,	-or,	-us,	*V.* miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora,
A. miti-ore, *vel* -ori, *&c.*			*A.* miti-oribus,	-oribus,	-oribus.

3. *Trium Terminationum.* | 3. Of three Terminations.

Acer *vel* acris, acris, acre, *ſharp.*

Sing.				*Plur.*		
N. a-cer *vel* -cris,	-cris,	-cre,	*N.* a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
G. a-cris,	-cris,	-cris,	*G.* a crium,	-crium,	-crium,
D. a-cri,	-cri,	-cri,	*D.* a-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus,
A. a-crem,	-crem,	-cre,	*A.* a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
V. ac-er *vel* -cris,	-cris,	-cre,	*V.* a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
A. a-cri,	-cri,	-cri:	*A.* a-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus.

REGULÆ.

1. Adjectiva tertiæ Declinationis habent *e* vel *i* in Ablativo ſingulari.

2. At ſi Neutrum ſit in *e*, Ablativus habet *i* tantùm.

3. Genitivus pluralis deſinit in *ium*; et Neutrum Nominativi, Accuſativi, et Vocativi, in *ia*.

4. Excipe Comparativa, quæ *um* et *a* poſtulant.

RULES.

1. *Adjectives of the Third Declenſion have* e *or* i *in the Ablative ſingular.*

2. *But if the Neuter be in* e, *the Ablative has* i *only.*

3. *The Genitive plural ends in* ium; *and the Neuter of the Nominative, Accuſative, and Vocative in* ia.

4. *Except Comparatives, which require* um *and* a.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Dives, Hoſpes, Soſpes, Superſtes, Juvenis, Senex,* and *Pauper,* have *e* in the Ablative Singular, and conſequently *um* in the Genitive plural.

2. *Compos, Impos, Conſors, Inops, Vigil, Supplex, Uber, Degener* and *Puber*; alſo Compounds ending in *ceps, fex, pes,* and *corpor*; as, *Princeps, Artifex, Bipes, Tricorpor,* have *um* not *ium.*

Note, That all theſe have ſeldom the Neut. Sing. and never almoſt the Neut. Plur. in the Nom. and Acc. To which add *Memor,* which has *memori* and *memorum*; and *Locuples,* which has *locupletium*; alſo, *Deſes, Reſes, Hebes, Perpes, Præpes, Teres, Concolor, Verſicolor*; which being hardly to be met with in the Genitive Plur. it is a Doubt whether they ſhould have *um* or *ium,* though I incline moſt to the former.

3. *Par* has *pari*; *vetus*, *vetera* and *veterum*; *Plus* (which hath only the Neut. in the Sing.) has *plure* and *plures*, *plura*, (or *pluria*) *plurium*.

NOTE, 1. That Comparatives, and Adjectives in *ns*, have more frequently *e* than *i*; and Participles in the Ablatives called *Absolute*, have generally *e*; as, *Carolo regnante*, not *regnanti*.

NOTE, 2. That Adjectives joined with Substantives Neuter, hardly ever have *e*, but *i*; as, *victrici ferro*, not *victrice*.

NOTE, 3. That Adjectives, when they are put substantively, have oftimes *e*; as, *Affinis*, *Familiaris*, *Rivalis*, *Sodalis*, &c. So *Par*, a Match; as, *Cum pare quæque suo coëunt*. Ovid.

Of NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

1. THE *Ordinal* and *Multiplicative* Numbers (see Chap. IX.) are regularly declined. The *Distributive* wants the Singular, as also doth the *Cardinal*, except *Unus*, which is declined as in *p.* 24. and hath the Plural, when joined with a Substantive that wanteth the Sing.; as, *Unæ literæ*, one Letter; *Una mœnia*, one Wall: Or when several Particulars are considered complexly as making one Compound; as, *Uni sex dies*, *i. e.* One Space of Six Days; *Una vestimenta*, *i. e.* One Suit of Apparel. *Plaut.*

Duo and *Tres* are declined after this Manner:

Plur.	*Nom.*	duo,	duæ,	duo,	*Plur.*	*Nom.*	tres,	tres, tria,
	Gen.	duorum,	duarum,	duorum,		*Gen.*	trium,	trium, trium,
	Dat.	duobus,	duabus,	duobus,		*Dat.*	tribus,	tribus, tribus,
	Acc.	duos *vel* -o,	duas,	duo,		*Acc.*	tres,	tres, tria,
	Voc.	duo,	duæ,	duo,		*Voc.*	tres,	tres, tria,
	Abl.	duobus,	duabus,	duobus.		*Abl.*	tribus,	tribus, tribus.

Ambo, both, is declined as *duo*.

2. From *Quatuor* to *Centum* are all indeclinable.

3. From *Centum* to *Mille* they are declined thus, *ducenti*, *ducentæ*, *ducenta*; *ducentorum*, *ducentarum*, *ducentorum*, &c.

4. As to *Mille*, *Varro* and all the Grammarians after him down to the last age, make it (when it is put before a Gen. Plur.) a Substantive indeclinable in the Sing. and in the Plur. declined, *Millia*, *millium*, *millibus*; but when it hath a Substantive joined to it in any other Case, they make it an Adjective Plural indeclinable. But *Scioppius*, and after him *Gronovius*, contend that *Mille* is always an Adjective Plural; and, under that Termination, of all Cases and Genders: But that it hath two Neuters, *hæc Mille*, and *hæc Millia*; that the first is used when one thousand is signified, and the second when more than one; and that where it seems to be a Substantive governing a Gen. *Multitudo*, *Numerus*, *Manus*, *Pecunia*, *Pondus*, *Spatium*, *Corpus*, or the like, are understood. I own, that formerly I was of this sentiment; but now the weighty reasons adduced by the most accurate *Perizonius* incline me rather to follow the ancient Grammarians.

After the Declension of Substantives and Adjectives separately, it may not be improper to exercise the Learner with some Examples of a Substantive and Adjective declined together; which will both make him more ready in the Declensions, and render the Dependence of the Adjective upon the Substantive more familiar to him. Let the Examples at first be of the same Terminations and Declensions; as, Dominus justus, *a just Lord*; Penna bona, *a good Pen*; Ingenium eximium, *an excellent Wit. Afterwards let them be different in one or both; as,* Puer probus, *a good Boy*; Lectio facilis, *an easy Lesson*; Poeta optimus, *an excellent Poet*; Fructus dulcis, *sweet Fruit*; Dies faustus, *a happy Day*, &c. *And if the Boy has as yet been taught Writing, let him write them either in the School or at home, to be revised by the Master next Day.*

Of IRREGULAR NOUNS.

THESE (for we cannot here make a full Enumeration of them) may be reduced to the following Scheme:

IRREGULAR NOUNS are,

1. **Defective.**
   - 1. Substantives. Wanting
     - 1. *Number*, { Sing. as, *Liberi, Minæ, Arma.* / *Plur.* as, *Aër, Humus, Ævum.*
     - 2. *Cases*, { Nom. and Voc. Sing. as, *Ditionis.* / Gen. Sing. as, *Chaos.* / Dat. Sing. as, *Plus.* / Voc. Sing. as, *Ego.* / Gen. Dat. and Abl. Plural, as, *Mel.*
     - or having only { Three; as, *Dica, dicam, dicas.* / Two; as, *Suppetiæ, Suppetias.* / One; as, *Dicis, Inficias, Noctu.*
   - 2. Adjectives. Wanting
     - 1. *Gender*, { Masc. as, *Cætera, cæterum.* / Fem. as, *Quisquis, quicquid.* / Neut. as, *Compos.* / Masc. and Fem. as, *Plus.* / Masc. and Neut. as, *Sicelis.* / Fem. and Neut. as, *Tros.*
     - 2. *Number*, { Plur. as, *Unusquisque.* / Sing. as, *Centum.*
     - 3. *Case*, { Voc. as, *Nullus,* / Dat. and Abl. as, *Tantundem.*
     - or having the Vocative only; as, *Macte, Macti.*

2. **Variable.**
   - 1. Too much. In *Gender* having *Sing.* and *Plur.*
     - Masc. Neut. as, *Mœnalus, Mœnala.*
     - Masc. Masc. and Neut. as, *Locus, -ci,* and *-ca.*
     - Fem. Neut. as, *Carbasus, Carbasa.*
     - Neut. Masc. as, *Cœlum, cœli.*
     - Neut. Fem. as, *Epulum, epulæ.*
     - Neut. Masc. and Neut. as, *Frenum, -ni,* and *-na.*
     - In *Declension* being of the { 2. and 1. as, *Delicium, deliciæ.* / 2. and 4. as, *Laurus, -ri,* and *-rus.* / 3. and 2. as, *Vas, -sis; -sa, -sorum.*
   - 2. Too little, as, *Indeclinables* { altogether, as, *Fas.* / in the Sing. as, *Cornu.*

3. **Redundant.**
   - In *Termination* - { only; as, *Helena, Helene.* / and Gender; as, *Tignus, tignum.* / and Decl. as, *Materia, materies.* / Gend. and Decl. as, *Æther, æthra.*
   - In *Gender* - - only; as, *hic et hoc Vulgus.*
   - In *Declension* - - { only; as, *Fames, famis,* of the 3d; Ablative, *fame,* of the 5th, because the last Syllable is always long with the Poets.

NOTE, 1. That the *Defective* Nouns are not ſo numerous as is commonly believed.

NOTE, 2. That thoſe which *vary too little*, may be ranked under the *Defective*; and thoſe which *vary too much*, under the *Redundant*; E. G. *Cœli, cœlorum*, comes not from *Cœlum*, but from *Cœlus*; and *Vaſa, Vaſorum*, not from *Vas, Vaſis*, but from *Vaſum, Vaſi*: But Cuſtom, which alone gives Laws to all Languages, has dropped the Singular, and retained the Plural; and ſo of others.

De Comparatione.

M. QUOT ſunt Gradus Comparationis?

D. Tres; *Poſitivus, Comparativus*, et *Superlativus.*

M. Quotæ Declinationis ſunt hi Gradus?

D. Poſitivus eſt Adjectivum Primæ et Secundæ Declinationis, vel Tertiæ tantùm; Comparativus eſt ſemper Tertiæ; Superlativus ſemper Primæ et Secundæ.

M. Unde formatur Comparativus Gradus?

D. A proximo Caſu Poſitivi in *i*, addendo pro Maſculino et Fœminino Syllabam *or*, et *us* pro Neutro: ut,

Of Compariſon.

M. *HOW many Degrees of Compariſon are there?*

S. *Three; the* Poſitive, Comparative, *and* Superlative.

M. *Of what Declenſion are theſe Degrees?*

S. *The Poſitive is an Adjective of the Firſt and Second Declenſion, or Third only; the Comparative is always of the Third; the Superlative always of the Firſt and Second.*

M. *Whence is the Comparative Degree formed?*

S. *From the next Caſe of the Poſitive in* i, *by adding for the Maſculine and Feminine the Syllable* or, *and* us *for the Neuter: as,*

Doctus, learned; Gen. *docti, doctior*, et *doctius*, more learned: *Mitis*, meek; Dat. *miti; mitior*, et *mitius*, more meek.

M. Unde formatur Superlativus?

D. 1. Si Poſitivus deſinat in *er*, Superlativus formatur addendo *rimus*: ut,

M. *Whence is the Superlative formed?*

S. 1. *If the Poſitive ends in* er, *the Superlative is formed by adding* rimus: *as,*

Pulcher, fair; *pulcherrimus*, moſt fair: *Pauper*, poor; *pauperrimus*, moſt poor.

2. Si Poſitivus non deſinat in *er*, Superlativus formatur à proximo Caſu in *i*, addendo *ſſimus*: ut,

2. *If the Poſitive ends not in* er, *the Superlative is formed from the next Caſe in* i, *by adding* ſſimus: *as,*

Gen. *docti; doctiſſimus*, moſt learned: Dat. *miti; mitiſſimus*, moſt meek.

By Grammatical COMPARISON we underſtand three Adjective Nouns, of which the two laſt are formed from the firſt, and import Compariſon with it, that is, Heightening or Leſſening of its Signification.

Conſequently thoſe Adjectives only which are capable of having their Signification increaſed or diminiſhed, can be compared.

The POSITIVE ſignifies the Quality of a Thing ſimply and abſolutely; as, *Durus*, hard; *Parvus*, little.

The COMPARATIVE heightens or leſſens that Quality; as, *Durior*, harder; *Minor*, leſs.

The SUPERLATIVE heightens or leſſens it to a very high or very low Degree; as, *Duriſſimus*, hardeſt, *or* moſt hard; *Minimus*, very little *or* leaſt.

The Poſitive hath various Terminations; the Comparative ends always in *or* and *us*; the Superlative always in *mus*, *ma*, *mum*.

[† *The Poſitive, properly ſpeaking, is no Degree of Compariſon, for it does not compare Things together: However, it is accounted one, becauſe the other two are founded upon and formed from it.*]

The Sign of the Comparative in our Language is the Syllable *er* added to an Adjective, *or* the Word *more* put before it.

The Sign of the Superlative is the Syllable *eſt* added to an Adjective, or the Words *very* or *moſt* put before it.

NOTE, That when the Poſitive is a long Word, or would otherwiſe ſound harſh, by having *er* or *eſt* added to it, we commonly make the Comparative by the Word *more*, and the Superlative by *moſt* or *very* put before it.

And for the like Reaſon, the Latin Comparative is ſometimes made by *Magis*, and the Superlative by *Valde* or *Maxime*, put before the Poſitive. And theſe are particularly uſed, when the Poſitive ends in *us* with a Vowel before it; as, *Pius*, godly; *Arduus*, high; *Idoneus*, fit; though not always.

IRREGULAR COMPARISONS.

1. Bonus,	melior,	optimus:	*Good,*	*better,*	*beſt.*
Malus,	pejor,	peſſimus:	*Evil,*	*worſe,*	*worſt.*
Magnus,	major,	maximus:	*Great,*	*greater,*	*greateſt.*
Parvus,	minor,	minimus:	*Little,*	*leſs,*	*leaſt.*

Multus, plurimus; multa, plurima; multum, plus, plurimum: *much, more, moſt.*

2. Facilis, *eaſy*; Humilis, *low*; Similis, *like*; make their Superlative by changing *is* into *limus*; thus, *facillimus, humillimus, ſimillimus.*

3. *Exter*, outward; *Citer*, hither; *Superus*, above; *Inferus*, below; *Poſterus*, behind; have regular Comparatives: But their Superlatives are, *extremus*, (or *extimus*,) uttermoſt; *citimus*, hithermoſt; *ſupremus*, (or *ſummus*,) uppermoſt, higheſt, laſt; *infimus*, (or *imus*,) loweſt; *poſtremus*, (or *poſtumus*,) lateſt or laſt.

4. Compounds in *Dicus*, *Loquus*, *Ficus*, and *Volus*, have *entior* and *entiſſimus*; as, *Maledicus*, one that raileth; *Magniloquus*, one that boaſteth; *Beneficus*, beneficent; *Malevolus*, malevolent. But theſe ſeem rather to come from Participles or Nouns in *ens*. Beſides, the Comparatives and Superlatives of Adjectives derived from *Loquor* and *Facio* are very rare, and *Terence* has *Mirificiſſimus*, and *Plautus* has *Mendaciloquius*.

5. *Prior*, former, has *Primus*, firſt; *Ulterior*, farther; *Ultimus*, fartheſt, *or* laſt; *Propior*, nearer; *Proximus*, neareſt, *or* next; *Ocior*, ſwifter; *Ociſſi-*

mus, ſwifteſt; their Poſitives being out of Uſe, or quite wanting. *Proximus* has alſo another Comparative formed from it, *viz.* *Proximior*.

6. There are alſo a great many other Adjectives capable of having their Signification increaſed, which yet want one or more of theſe Degrees of Compariſon; as, *Almus*, gracious, without Comparative and Superlative; *Ingens*, great; *Ingentior*, greater, without the Superl.; *Sacer*, holy; *Sacerrimus*, moſt holy, without the Compar.; *Anterior*, former, without Poſit. and Superl.

¶ *Theſe three Degrees of Compariſon, being nothing elſe but three diſtinct Adjectives, may be declined either ſeverally each by itſelf, or jointly together; Reſpect ſtill being had to their Declenſions. But the firſt Way is much eaſier, and will anſwer all the Purpoſes of Compariſon as well as the other.*

CAP. II.

De Pronomine.

M. QUOT ſunt Pronomina † ſimplicia?

D. Octodecim; *Ego, Tu, Sui; Ille, Ipſe, Iſte, Hic, Is, Quis, Qui; Meus, Tuus, Suus, Noſter, Veſter; Noſtras, Veſtras*, et *Cujas*.

¶ Ex his tria ſunt Subſtantiva, *Ego, Tu, Sui*; reliqua quindecim ſunt Adjectiva.

CHAP. II.

Of Pronoun.

M. HOW *many* † *ſimple Pronouns are there?*

S. *Eighteen;* Ego, Tu, Sui; Ille, Ipſe, Iſte, Hic, Is, Quis, Qui; Meus, Tuus, Suus, Noſter, Veſter; Noſtras, Veſtras, *and* Cujas.

¶ *Of theſe three are Subſtantives,* Ego, Tu, Sui; *the other fifteen are Adjectives.*

Ego, *I.*

Sing.	*Nom.* ego, *I,*	*Plur.*	*Nom.* nos, *we,*
	Gen. mei, *of me,*		*Gen.* noſtrum *vel* noſtri, *of us,*
	Dat. mihi, *to me,*		*Dat.* nobis, *to us,*
	Acc. me, *me,*		*Acc.* nos, *us,*
	Voc. ——		*Voc.* ——
	Abl. me, *with me:*		*Abl.* nobis, *with us.*

Tu, *Thou.*

Sing.	*N.* tu, *thou,*	*Plur.*	*N.* vos, *ye,* [*you,*]
	G. tui, *of thee,*		*G.* veſtrum *vel* veſtri, *of you,*
	D. tibi, *to thee,*		*D.* vobis, *to you,*
	A. te, *thee,*		*A.* vos, *you,*
	V. tu, *O thou,*		*V.* vos, *O ye,* [*you,*]
	A. te, *with thee:*		*A.* vobis, *with you.*

† See Chap. IX.

Sui, *of himſelf, of herſelf, of itſelf.*

Sing.	*N.* ———	*Plur.*	*N.* ———
	G. ſui, *of himſelf*, &c.		*G.* ſui, *of themſelves*,
	D. ſibi, *to himſelf*,		*D.* ſibi, *to themſelves*,
	A. ſe, *himſelf*,		*A.* ſe, *themſelves*,
	V. ———		*V.* ———
	A. ſe, *with himſelf*:		*A.* ſe, *with themſelves.*

A PRONOUN is an irregular Kind of Noun: *Or*, it is a Part of Speech which has reſpect to, and ſupplies the place of a Noun; as, inſtead of your Name, I ſay, *Tu*, Thou *or* You; inſtead of *Jacobus fecit*, James did it, I ſay, *Ille fecit*, He did it, *viz.* James.

NOTE, 1. That the Dat. *Mibi* is ſometimes by the Poets contracted into *Mi.*

NOTE, 2. That of old the Gen. Plur. of *Ego* was *Noſtrorum* and *Noſtrarum*; of *Tu*, *Veſtrorum* and *Veſtrarum*, (of which there are ſeveral Examples in *Plautus* and *Terence*) which were afterwards contracted into *Noſtrum* and *Veſtrum.*

NOTE, 3. That we uſe *Noſtrum* and *Veſtrum* after Numerals, Partitives, Comparatives, and Superlatives; and *Noſtri* and *Veſtri* after other Nouns, and Verbs; though there want not ſome Examples of theſe laſt with *Noſtrum* and *Veſtrum*, even in *Cicero* himſelf, as *Voſſius* ſhews.

Ille, illa, illud; *He, ſhe, that* or *it.*

Sing.	*N.* ille,	illa,	illud,	*Plur.*	*N.* illi,	illæ,	illa,
	G. illius,	illius,	illius,		*G.* illorum,	illarum,	illorum,
	D. illi,	illi,	illi,		*D.* illis,	illis,	illis,
	A. illum,	illam,	illud,		*A.* illos,	illas,	illa,
	V. ille,	illa,	illud,		*V.* illi,	illæ,	illa,
	A. illo,	illa,	illo:		*A.* illis,	illis,	illis.

Ipſe, ipſa, ipſum, *he himſelf, ſhe herſelf, itſelf*; and iſte, iſta, iſtud, *he, ſhe, that*; are declined as *ille*, ſave only that *ipſe* hath *ipſum* in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. ſing. Neuter.

Hic, hæc, hoc, *This.*

Sing.	*N.* hic,	hæc,	hoc,	*Plur.*	*N.* hi,	hæ,	hæc,
	G. hujus,	hujus,	hujus,		*G.* horum,	harum,	horum,
	D. huic,	huic,	huic,		*D.* his,	his,	his,
	A. hunc,	hanc,	hoc,		*A.* hos,	has,	hæc,
	V. hic,	hæc,	hoc,		*V.* hi,	hæ,	hæc,
	A. hoc,	hac,	hoc:		*A.* his,	his,	his.

Is, ea, id; *He, ſhe, it* or *that.*

Sing.	*N.* is,	ea,	id,	*Plur.*	*N.* ii,	eæ,	ea,
	G. ejus,	ejus,	ejus,		*G.* eorum,	earum,	eorum,
	D. ei,	ei,	ei,		*D.* iis *vel* eis,		
	A. eum,	eam,	id,		*A.* eos,	eas,	ea,
	V. ———				*V.* ———		
	A. eo,	ea,	eo;		*A.* iis *vel* eis,		

Quis, quæ, quod *vel* quid? *Who, which, what?*

	Sing.				*Plur.*		
N.	quis,	quæ,	quod *vel* quid,	*N.*	qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G.	cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	*G.*	quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D.	cui,	cui,	cui,	*D.*	queis *vel* quibus,		
A.	quem,	quam,	quod *vel* quid,	*A.*	quos,	quas,	quæ,
V.	——	——	——	*V.*	——	——	——
A.	quo,	qua,	quo:	*A.*	queis *vel* quibus.		

Qui, quæ, quod; *Who, which, that.*

	Sing.				*Plur.*		
N.	qui,	quæ,	quod,	*N.*	qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G.	cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	*G.*	quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D.	cui,	cui,	cui,	*D.*	queis *vel* quibus,		
A.	quem,	quam,	quod,	*A.*	quos,	quas,	quæ,
V.	——	——	——	*V.*	——	——	——
A.	quo,	qua,	quo:	*A.*	queis *vel* quibus.		

Meus, my, *or* mine; *Tuus*, thy, *or* thine; *Suus*, his own, her own, its own, their own; are declined like *Bonus*, *-a*, *-um*: and *Noſter*, our, *or* ours; *Veſter*, your, *or* yours; like *Pulcher*, *-chra*, *-chrum*, of the Firſt and Second Declenſion. But *Tuus*, *Suus*, and *Veſter*, want the Vocative; *Noſter* and *Meus* have it, in which this laſt hath *mi* (and ſometimes *meus*) in the Maſc. Singular.

Noſtras, of our country; *Veſtras*, of your country; *Cujas*, of what *or* which country; are declined like *Felix*, of the Third Declenſion, Gen. *Noſtratis*, Dat. *Noſtrati*, &c.

Note, 1. That all Nouns and Pronouns which one cannot call upon, or addreſs himſelf unto, want the Vocative. In conſequence of which Rule, many Nouns, as, *Nullus*, *Nemo*, *Qualis*, *Quantus*, *Quot*, &c. and ſeveral Pronouns, as, *Ego*, *Sui*, *Quis*, &c. want the Vocative; but not ſo many, either of the one or the other, as is commonly taught. For which Reaſon we have given Vocatives to *Ille*, *Ipſe*, *Hic*, and *Idem*, therein following the Judgment of the great *Voſſius*, *Meſſieurs de Port Royal*, and *Johnſon*, which they ſupport by the following Authorities:

Eſto nunc, Sol, teſtis, et hæc mihi terra precanti. Virg. Æn. 12.

Tu mihi libertas illa paterna vale. Tibul. lib. 1. El. 4.

O nox illa, quæ pene æternas huic urbi tenebras attuliſti. Cic. pro Flacc.

Ipſe meas æther accipe ſumme preces. Ovid. in Ibin.

And the Vocative of *Idem* ſeems to be confirmed by that of *Ovid*, Met. 15.

——————————— *quique fuiſti*
Hippolytus, dixit, nunc idem Virbius eſto.

Though all Authors before them will only allow four Pronouns, *viz.* *Tu*, *Meus*, *Noſter* and *Noſtras*, to have the Vocative.

Note, 2. That *Qui* is ſometimes uſed for *Quis*; as, Cic. *Qui tantus fuit labor?* Ter. *Qui erit rumor populi, ſi id feceris?*

NOTE, 3. That *Quod*, with its Compounds *Aliquod*, *Quodvis*, *Quoddam*, &c. are uſed when they agree with a Subſtantive in the ſame Caſe; *Quid*, with its Compounds *Aliquid*, *Quidvis*, *Quiddam*, &c. either have no Subſtantive expreſſed, or govern one in the Genitive: Whence it is that theſe laſt are commonly reckoned Subſtantives. But that *quid*, as well as *quod*, is originally an Adjective, its Signification plainly ſhews; otherwiſe we ſhall make *Multum*, *Plus*, *Tantum*, *Quantum*, &c. alſo Subſtantives, when they govern the Genitive; which yet moſt Grammarians agree to be Adjectives, having the common Word *Negotium* underſtood.

NOTE, 4. That *Qui* the Relative hath oftentimes *qui* in the Ablative, and that (which is remarkable) in all Genders and Numbers, as Mr *Johnſon* evinces by a great many Examples out of *Plautus* and *Terence*; to which he might have added one out of *C. Nepos*, III. 3.

NOTE, 5. That *Noſtras*, *Veſtras*, and *Cujas*, are declined like *Gentile* or *National* Nouns in *as* of the Third Declenſion, in imitation of which they are formed; as, *Arpinas*, *Fidenas*, *Privernas*, a Man, Woman *or* Thing, of *or* belonging to the Towns of *Arpinum*, *Fidenæ*, or *Privernum*, and may have the Neuter as well as theſe: (For as *Cic.* has *Iter Arpinas*, and *Liv. Bellum Privernas*; ſo *Colum.* has *Arbuſtum noſtras*, and *Cic. Noſtratia verba*,) contrary to what *Linacer* teaches.

[*I paſs over taking Notice, that in old Authors, eſpecially* Plautus, *we find* quis *and* quiſquis *ſometimes of the Fem. Gender*; mis *and* tis, *for* mei *and* tui; hiſce *for* hi; hibus, ibus, *for* his, iis; illæ, ipſæ, iſtæ, quæ, *in the Gen. or Dat. Sing. Fem.*; em *for* eum; iſtes, *for* iſtos; quoius, quoi, *for* cujus, cui, *becauſe they are extraordinary.*]

Of COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

I. Some are compounded of *Quis* and *Qui*, with ſome other Word or Syllable. In theſe *Quis* is ſometimes the firſt and ſometimes the laſt Part of the Word compounded: But *Qui* is always the firſt.

1. The Compounds of *Quis*, when it is put firſt, are *quiſnam*, who? *quiſpiam*, *quiſquam*, any one; *quiſque*, every one; *quiſquis*, whoſoever. Which are thus declined:

	Nom.		*Gen.*	*Dat.*
Quiſnam,	quænam,	quodnam *vel* quidnam;	cujuſnam,	cuinam.
Quiſpiam,	quæpiam,	quodpiam *vel* quidpiam;	cujuſpiam,	cuipiam.
Quiſquam,	quæquam,	quodquam *vel* quidquam;	cujuſquam,	cuiquam.
Quiſque,	quæque,	quodque *vel* quidque;	cujuſque,	cuique.
Quiſquis,	———	quidquid *vel* quicquid;	cujuſcujus,	cuicui.

And ſo forth in their other Caſes, according to the ſimple *quis*. But *quiſquis* has no Feminine at all, and the Neuter only in the Nom. and Acc; *Quiſquam* has alſo *quicquam* for *quidquam*. Acc. *quenquam*, without the Fem. The Plural is ſcarcely uſed.

2. The Compounds of *Quis*, when it is put laſt, are, *Aliquis*, ſome; *Ecquis*, who? To which ſome add *Nequis*, *Siquis* and *Numquis*; but theſe are more frequently read ſeparately, *ne quis*, *ſi quis*, *num quis*. They are thus declined:

	Nom.		*Gen.*	*Dat.*
Aliquis,	aliqua,	aliquod *vel* aliquid;	alicujus,	alicui.
Ecquis,	ecqua *vel* ecquæ,	ecquod *vel* ecquid;	eccujus,	eccui.
Si quis,	ſi qua,	ſi quod *vel* ſi quid;	ſi cujus,	ſi cui.
Ne quis,	ne qua,	ne quod *vel* ne quid;	ne cujus,	ne cui.
Num quis,	num qua,	num quod *vel* num quid;	num cujus,	num cui

NOTE, That theſe, and only theſe, have *qua* in the Nom. Sing. Fem.; and Nom. and Acc. Plur. Neut.

3. The Compounds of *Qui*, are, *quicunque*, whoſoever; *quidam*, ſome; *quilibet*, *quivis*, any one, whom you pleaſe; and are thus declined:

	Nom.			*Gen.*	*Dat.*
Quicunque,	quæcunque,	quodcunque;		cujuſcunque,	cuicunque.
Quidam,	quædam,	quoddam *vel* quiddam;		cujuſdam,	cuidam.
Quilibet,	quælibet,	quodlibet *vel* quidlibet;		cujuſlibet,	cuilibet.
Quivis,	quævis,	quodvis *vel* quidvis;		cujuſvis,	cuivis.

Some of theſe are twice compounded; as, *Ecquiſnam*, who? *Unuſquiſque*, every one. The firſt is ſcarce declined beyond its Nom. and the ſecond wants the Plur.

NOTE, 1. That all theſe Compounds want the Vocative, except *Quiſque*, *Aliquis*, *Quilibet*, *Unuſquiſque*, and perhaps ſome others. *Vid. Voſſ.* p. 335.

NOTE, 2. That all theſe Compounds have ſeldom or never *queis*, but *quibus*, in their Dat. and Abl. Plur.

NOTE, 3. That *Quidam* hath *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam* vel *quiddam*, in the Acc. Sing. and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam*, in the Gen. Plur. *n* being put inſtead of *m* for the better Sound, as it is for the ſame Reaſon in theſe Caſes of *Idem*.

II. Some reckon among Compound Pronouns, *Ego*, *Tu*, and *Sui*, with *Ipſe*; but in the beſt Books they are generally read ſeparately; which ſeems neceſſary, becauſe of *te ipſe*, and *ſe ipſe*, where the two Words are of different Caſes.

III. *Is* is compounded with the Syllable *dem*, and contracted into *Idem*, the ſame: Which is thus declined:

	Sing.				*Plur.*		
Nom.	Idem,	eadem,	idem,	*Nom.*	iidem,	eædem,	eadem,
Gen.	ejuſdem,	ejuſdem,	ejuſdem,	*Gen.*	eorundem,	earundem,	eorundem,
Dat.	eidem,	eidem,	eidem,	*Dat.*	eiſdem *vel* iiſdem,		
Acc.	eundem,	eandem,	idem,	*Acc.*	eoſdem,	eaſdem,	eadem,
Voc.	idem,	eadem,	idem,	*Voc.*	iidem,	eædem,	eadem,
Abl.	eodem,	eadem,	eodem:	*Abl.*	eiſdem *vel* iiſdem.		

IV. Moſt of the other Compound Pronouns are only to be found in certain Caſes and Genders; as,

1. Of *Iſte* and *hic* is compounded, Nom. *Iſthic*, *iſthæc*, *iſthoc* vel *iſthuc*. Acc. *Iſthunc*, *iſthanc*, *iſthoc* vel *iſthuc*. *Abl. Iſthoc*, *iſthac*, *iſthoc*. Nom. and Acc. Plur. Neut. *Iſthæc*.

2. Of *Ecce* and *Is* is compounded *Eccum*, *eccam*; Plur. *Eccos*, *eccas*. And from *Ecce* and *Ille*, *Ellum*, *ellam*; *Ellos*, *ellas*, in the Accuſatives.

3. Of *Modus* and *Is*, *Hic*, *Iſte*, and *Quis*, are compounded theſe Genitives *Ejuſmodi*, *hujuſmodi*, *iſtiuſmodi*, *cujuſmodi*; and ſometimes with the Syllable *ce* put in the middle *ejuſcemodi*, *hujuſcemodi*, &c.

4. Of *cum* and theſe Ablatives *me*, *te*, *ſe*, *nobis*, *vobis*, *qui* or *quo*, and *quibus*, are compounded *mecum*, *tecum*, *ſecum*, *nobiſcum*, *vobiſcum*, *quicum* or *quocum*, and *quibuſcum*.

5. To theſe add ſome Pronouns compounded with theſe ſyllabical Adjections, *met*, *te*, *ce*, *pte*, *cine*, to make their Signification more pointed and emphatical; as, *Egomet*, *tute*, *hujuſce*, *meapte*, *hiccine*.

REMARKS on ENGLISH PRONOUNS.

1. In the Nominative, or *Foregoing State*, (as the *Engliſh* Grammarians call it) we uſe, *I*, *Thou*, *He*, *She*, *We*, *Ye*, *They*, and *Who*: But in the other Caſes (which they name the *Following State*) we uſe, *Me*, *Thee*, *Him*, *Her*, *Us*, *You*, *Them*, and *Whom*.

2. When we ſpeak of a *Perſon*, we uſe *Who* and *Whom*, whether we ask a Queſtion or not; as, *Who did it? The Man who did it.* But if we ſpeak of a *Thing*, with a Queſtion, we uſe *What?* as, *What Book is that?* Without a Queſtion, we uſe *Which*; as, *The Book which you gave me.* And then it is frequently underſtood; as, *The Book you gave me.*

NOTE, That *What* is often uſed, even without a Queſtion, inſtead of *the Thing which*, or *That which*; as, *I know what you deſign*, i. e. *The Thing which*, or *That which* you deſign. As, on the contrary, when it refers to ſome particular Thing mentioned before, we make uſe of *Which*, even with a Queſtion; as, *Give me the Book; Which Book? Which of the Books?*

3. *This* makes in the Plural *Theſe*, and *That* makes *Thoſe*.

NOTE, That *That* is frequently uſed inſtead of *Who*, *Whom*, or *Which*; as, *The Man that told you, the Man that we ſaw, the Book that I lent you.*

4. We uſe *My*, *Thy*, *Her*, *Our*, *Your*, *Their*, when they are joined with Subſtantives or the Word *Own*; and *Mine*, *Thine*, *Hers*, *Ours*, *Yours*, *Theirs*, when the Subſtantive is left out or underſtood; as, *My Book*, *This Book is mine*, &c.

NOTE, That with *Own*, or a Subſtantive beginning with a Vowel, we ſometimes uſe *Mine* and *Thine*: as, *My Eye*, or *Mine Eye*; *Thy own*, or *Thine own.*

5. We often uſe *Here*, *There*, *Where*, compounded with theſe Particles *of*, *By*, *Upon*, *About*, *In*, *With*, inſtead of *This*, *That*, *Which*, and *What*, with theſe ſame Particles; as, *Hereof*, *Hereby*, *Hereupon*, *Hereabouts*, *Therein*, *Herewith*; for *Of this*, *By this*, *Upon this*, *About this Place*, *In this*, *With this*, &c.

6. *Whoſe* and *Its* are Genitives, inſtead of, *Of whom*, *Of it*; and it is a Fault to uſe *Its* for *'Tis* or *it is*, as ſome do.

CAP. III.

De Verbo.

Q. QUomodo declinatur Verbum?

D. Per Voces, Modos, Tempora, Numeros, et Perſonas.

M. Quot ſunt Voces?

D. Duæ; *Activa* et *Paſſiva.*

M. Quot ſunt Modi?

D. Quatuor; *Indicativus*, *Subjunctivus*, *Imperativus*, et *Infinitivus.*

M. Quot ſunt Numeri?

CHAP. III.

Of Verb.

M. HOW *is a Verb declined?*

S. *By Voices, Moods, Tenſes, Numbers, and Perſons.*

M. *How many Voices are there?*

S. Two; *the* Active *and* Paſſive.

M. *How many Moods are there?*

S. *Four*; Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, *and* Infinitive.

M. *How many Numbers are there?*

D. Duo; *Singularis* et *Pluralis.*

M. Quot ſunt Tempora?

D. Quinque; *Præſens, Præteritum-imperfectum, Præteritum-perfectum, Præteritum-pluſquam-perfectum,* et *Futurum.*

M. Quot ſunt Perſonæ?

D. Tres; *Prima, Secunda, Tertia.*

S. *Two;* Singular *and* Plural.

M. *How many Tenſes are there?*

S. *Five;* the Preſent, the Preter-imperfect, the Preter-perfect, the Preter-pluperfect, *and* the Future.

M. *How many Perſons are there?*

S. *Three;* Firſt, Second, Third.

A VERB *is a Part of Speech which ſignifies to be, to do, or to ſuffer.* Or *a Verb is that Part of Speech which expreſſes what is affirmed or ſaid of Thing*

A Verb may be diſtinguiſhed from any other Part of Speech theſe tw Ways:—1. A Verb being the moſt neceſſary and eſſential Part of a Sen tence, without which it cannot ſubſiſt, whatever Word with a Subſtantiv Noun makes full Senſe, or a Sentence, is a Verb; and that which doe not make full Senſe with it, is not a Verb. 2. Whatever Word with HE or IT SHALL before it makes Senſe, is a Verb; otherwiſe not.

I. In moſt Verbs there are two forms or VOICES; the ACTIVE endin in *o*, and the PASSIVE in *or*. The former expreſſes what is done by th Nominative or Perſon before it; the latter what is ſuffered by or done t the Nominative or Perſon before it; as, *Amo*, I love; *Amor*, I am loved.

II. The Moods are divided into *Finite* and *Infinite*. The firſt thre *viz.* the *Indicative, Subjunctive,* and *Imperative,* are called FINITE, be cauſe they have certain fixed Terminations anſwering to certain Perſon both ſingular and plural. The laſt is called INFINITIVE or INFINIT becauſe it is not confined to one Number or Perſon more than another.

1. The INDICATIVE Mood affirms or denies poſitively; as, *Amo,* love; *Non Amo,* I do not love: Or elſe aſks a queſtion; as, *An ama* Doſt thou love? *Annon amas?* Doſt thou not love?

2. The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood generally depends upon another Ve in the ſame Sentence, either going before or coming after; as, *Si m ametis, præcepta mea ſervate,* If ye love me, keep my Commandments.

[*This Mood is commonly branched out into three Moods,* viz. *the* Optati *the* Subjunctive *more ſtrictly taken, and the* Potential. 1. *It is called* O TATIVE, *when a Word importing a Wiſh, as,* Utinam, *Would to God,* ſi, *O if, goes before it.* 2. *It is named* SUBJUNCTIVE, *when it is ſ joined to ſome other Conjunction or Adverb, or to Interrogatives becomi Indefinites,* (See Chap. IX.) 3. *It is called* POTENTIAL, *when with t ſimple Affirmation of the Verb is alſo ſignified ſome Modification or Affect of it, ſuch as a* Power, Poſſibility, Liberty, Duty, Will, *&c. the Signs whe in our Language are,* May, Can, Might, Could, Would, Should, *and* H (*for* Would have *or* Should have; as, *They had repented,* for *would hav But becauſe the Terminations of theſe Moods are the ſame, we have comp hended them all under one,* viz. *the* Subjunctive, *to which, with ſmall Diffic*

they may be reduced. Otherwiſe if we will conſtitute as many Moods as there are various Modifications wherewith a Verb or Affirmation can be affected, we muſt multiply them to a far greater Number, and ſo we ſhall have a Promiſſive, Hortative, Precative, Conceſſive, Mandative, Interrogative *Mood; nay, a* Volitive *and* Debitive, *which are commonly included in the* Potential. *As for the* Optative, *it is plain that the Wiſh is not in the Verb itſelf, (which ſignifies only the Matter of it, or what is wiſhed,) but in the Verb* Opto, *which is underſtood, with* ut, uti, *or* utinam, *which really ſignify no more but* That. *And it is very probable that in like Manner ſome Verb or other Word, may alſo be underſtood to what is called the* Potential *Mood, ſuch as* Ita eſt, Res ita eſt, Fieri poteſt ut, *&c. as* Voſſius, Sanctius, Perizonius, *and others do contend; though* Mr Johnſon *is of another Opinion.*]

3. The IMPERATIVE Mood commands, exhorts, or entreats; as, *Ama*, Love thou.

4. The INFINITIVE Mood expreſſes the Signification of the Verb in general, and is engliſhed by TO; as, *Amare*, To love.

III. The TENSES are either *Simple* or *Compound*. The SIMPLE *Tenſes* are the *Preſent*, the *Preter-perfect* and *Future*.

1. The PRESENT
2. The PRETER-PERFECT } Tenſe ſpeaks of Time now { Preſent. Paſt.
3. The FUTURE { To come.

The COMPOUND Tenſes are, the *Preter-imperfect*, and the *Preter-pluperfect*.

4. The PRETER-IMPERFECT refers to ſome paſt Time, and imports that the Thing was preſent and unfiniſhed then; as, *Amabam*, I did love, [*viz.* then.]

5. The PRETER-PLUPERFECT refers to ſome paſt Time, and imports that the Thing was paſt at or before that Time; as, *Scripſeram epiſtolam*, I had written a Letter, [*i. e.* before that Time.]

There is alſo a Compound Future Tenſe called the FUTURE-PERFECT, or EXACT; which refers to ſome Time yet to come, and imports that a Thing as yet future ſhall be paſt and finiſhed at or before that Time; as, *Cum cœnavero, tu leges*; When I ſhall have ſupped, [*i. e.* after ſupper,] you ſhall read. This Future is only in the Subjunctive Mood, and the Sign of it is *Shall have*; as the other Future, called the FUTURE-IMPERFECT, is only in the Indicative, which, when joined with another Future, imports that two Things yet Future ſhall be cotemporary, or exiſt at one Time; as, *Cum cœnabo, tu leges*; When I ſhall ſup, [*i. e.* in Time of Supper,] you ſhall read.

[*And not only the Tenſes, but even the MOODS themſelves may be divided into* SIMPLE *and* COMPOUND. *I call the* Indicative *a* Simple Mood, *becauſe it ſimply affirms ſomething of its Perſon or Nominative. But the other three Moods I call* Compound, *becauſe they have ſome other* Ideas *or* Modifications *of our Thoughts ſuperadded to the ſimple Signification of the Verb; ſuch as,* a Command, a Deſire, Prohibition, Poſſibility, Liberty, Will, Duty, Wiſh, Conceſſion, Suppoſition, Condition, Purpoſe, *&c. Theſe Modifications are either really included in the Verb; as* a Command, *&c. in the* Imperative, *and, according to* Johnſon, Power, Will, Duty, *&c in the Mood called* Potential; *or cloſely interwoven with it by the help of a Conjunction, Adverb, or other Verb expreſſed or underſtood: And becauſe theſe alſo generally denote Time, they very frequently make all the Tenſes of theſe Moods to become* Com-

pound Tenſes. *For, with reſpect to their* Execution, *they are generally future; but with reſpect to their* Modal Signification, *they may fall under any of the other Diſtinctions of Time as well as the Future. Thus, for inſtance,* Lege, *Read thou, with reſpect to its* Execution, *is Future; but with reſpect to the* Command, *it is Preſent. Again, in* Legam, *I may or can read, the* Action (*if done at all*) *muſt be Future; but the* Liberty *or* Poſſibility *are Preſent: And ſo of others. Now, as it ſeems evident, that from theſe* Modifications *of the Verb, more than from the bare* Execution *of it, the Tenſes of theſe Moods have at firſt been diſtinguiſhed; ſo I am of opinion that had Grammarians taken their Meaſures accordingly, they had not rendered this Matter ſo intricate as they have done. For ſome of them, as* Sanctius, &c. *determining the Times of theſe Moods by the* Execution *only, have made the whole* Imperative *and* Subjunctive *of the Future Time, and the* Infinitive *and* Participles *of all Times, or rather of no Time: Others,* viz. Voſſius, Linacer, Alvarus, Verepæus, &c. *tho' they will not go ſo far as* Sanctius, *yet upon the ſame Grounds make* Utinam legam *the Future of the Optative,* Utinam legerem *the Preſent of it. By the ſame Rule they make a Future of the* Potential *in* RIM; *as,* Citius crediderim, *I ſhould or ſhall ſooner believe: And another of the* Subjunctive *in* ISSEM; *as,* Juravit ſe illum ſtatim interfecturum, niſi jusjurandum ſibi dediſſet; *He ſwore he would preſently kill him, if he ſhould not ſwear to him,* Cic. *But, with all imaginable deference to theſe great men, I humbly think, that theſe Tenſes may be more eaſily accounted for, if we conſider them as* Compound, *i. e. reſpecting one Time as to their* Execution, *and another as to the various* Modifications *ſuperadded to or involved in their Signification. To inſtance in the two laſt Examples, (becauſe they ſeem to have the greateſt Difficulty,)* citius crediderim *ſeems to import theſe two Things: 1ſt, That* I have and continue to have a Reaſon why I ſhould not believe it, *which Reaſon is of the Imperfect or paſt Time; and, 2dly, That* I ſhall ſooner have believed it than another Thing, *with reſpect to which it ſhall be paſt: For there are a great many Examples, where the Preterite in* RIM *hath the ſame Signification with the Future-perfect in* RO; *as,* Si te inde exemerim, *Terent. for* exemero. *See* Voſſ. lib. v. cap. 15. *and* Aul. Gell. lib. xviii. cap. 2. *As to the other Example, the Compoſition of two Times is yet more evident: For tho'* Jusjurandum dediſſet *be poſterior, and conſequently future with reſpect to* Juravit, *yet it is prior, not only to the Time of the Relation, but to* interfecturum; *to prevent which, it behoved it neceſſarily to be paſt; And ſo of others. The ſame Rule, in my opinion, will likewiſe hold in the* Infinitive *and* Participles, *which of themſelves have always* one fixed Time; *and when they ſeem to be of another Time, that is not in them, but in the Verb that goes before them, or comes after them. Thus, for inſtance* Scribere *is always preſent or co-exiſtent with the Verb before it, and* Scripſiſſe *is always prior to the ſame Verb in all its Tenſes; as,* Dicit, dixit, *or* dicet; juvat, juvit, *or* juvabit, Me ſcribere *and* Me ſcripſiſſe. *So alſo the* Participles *have a* fixed Time, *preſent, paſt, or future, and when any Part of the Verb* Sum *is joined with them, they retain their own Times, and have thoſe of that Verb ſuperadded to them. But becauſe there are innumerable Occaſions of Speaking, wherein the nice Diſtinctions of Times are not neceſſary, therefore it frequently happens that they are promiſcuouſly uſed; as I could evince by a great many Examples, not only in the* Paſſive, *but* Active *Voice, both in the* Latin *and other Languages, if there were place for it; which yet, in my judgment, does not hinder, but that every Part of a Verb hath formally, and of its own Nature, a certain Time,* ſimple *or* compound, *to which it is fixed and determined.*]

IV. There are two NUMBERS, the SINGULAR and the PLURAL, anſwering to the ſame Numbers of a Noun or Pronoun.

V. There are three PERSONS in each Number; the FIRST ſpeaks of itſelf, the SECOND is ſpoken to, and the THIRD is ſpoken of. The *Firſt* hath only EGO and NOS, the *Second* only TU and VOS, and the *Third* any Subſtantive Noun Singular and Plural, put before the reſpective Terminations of the Verb, anſwering to them through all Voices, Moods, and Tenſes.

[*A Verb hath the ſame Reſpect to its Nominative that an Adjective hath to its Subſtantive: And therefore, as an Adjective hath not properly either Genders or Numbers, but certain Terminations fitted for thoſe of its Subſtantive; ſo a Verb hath properly neither Perſons nor Numbers, but certain Terminations anſwering to the Perſons and Numbers of its Nominative.*]

NOTE, 1. That *Ego* and *Tu* are ſeldom expreſſed, becauſe the Terminations of the Verb immediately diſcover them, without any hazard of a Miſtake.

NOTE, 2. That if a Subſtantive Noun be joined with *Ego* or *Tu*, the Verb is of the Perſon of theſe Pronouns, not of the Noun.

NOTE, 3. That in the Continuation of a Diſcourſe, the third Perſon is alſo frequently underſtood, becauſe eaſily known by what went before; and theſe Pronouns, *ille*, *ipſe*, *iſte*, *hic*, *is*, *idem*, *quis*, and *qui*, do often ſupply the Place of it.

The ENGLISH SIGNS of the TENSES are:

Preſent. { Act. the Theme of the Verb, and *eſt*, *eth*, or *s*; or, for the greater Emphaſis, *do*, *doſt*, *doth*, or *does*, before it.
Paſſ. *am*, *art*, *is*, *are*, *be*, *beeſt*, with a Word in *ed*, *en*, *t*, &c.

Imperf. { Act. *ed*, *edſt*, &c. or, for the greater Emphaſis, *did*, *didſt*, before it.
Paſſ. *was*, *waſt*, *were*, *wert*, with a Word in *ed*, *en*, &c.

Perfect. { Act. *have*, *haſt*, *hath* or *has*, with a Word in *ed*, *en*, &c. or as the Imp.
Paſſ. *have been*, *haſt been*, *hath* or *has been*, with a Word in *ed*, *en*, &c.

Pluper. { Act *had*, *hadſt*, with a Word in *ed*, *en*, &c.
Paſſ. *had been*, *hadſt been*, with a Word in *ed*, *en*, &c.

Future. { Act. *ſhall*, *will*, *ſhalt*, *wilt*, with the Verb.
Paſſ. *ſhall be*, *will be*, *ſhalt be*, *wilt be*, with a Word in *ed*, *en*, &c.

The *Subjunctive* Mood Active has frequently theſe Signs:

Preſent. *may* or *can*.
Imperf. *might*, *could*, *would*, *ſhould*.
Perfect. *may have* or *might have*, *could have*, *would have*, *ſhould have*.
Pluperf. *might have*, *could have*, *would have*, *ſhould have* or *had*.
Future. *ſhall have*.

The *Paſſive* has frequently the ſame Signs, with *be* or *been*.

De Conjugationibus.

M. QUOT ſunt Conjugationes?

D. Quatuor; *Prima*, *Secunda*, *Tertia*, et *Quarta*.

M. Quæ ſunt Notæ harum Conjugationum?

Of Conjugations.

M. *HOW many Conjugations are there?*

S. *Four*; Firſt, Second, Third, *and* Fourth.

M. *What are the Marks of theſe Conjugations?*

Prima	habet	A longum	ante *re* Infinitivi.	*First*	*hath*	*A long*	before re of the Infinitive.
Secunda		E longum		*Second*		*E long*	
Tertia		E breve		*Third*		*E ſhort*	
Quarta		I longum		*Fourth*		*I long*	

The Common *Characteriſtic* or MARK by which theſe Conjugations are diſtinguiſhed from one another, is one of theſe three Vowels,—A, E, I, before the RE of the Infinitive Active, though they alſo may be known by the ſame Vowels in ſeveral other Parts of them; for *A* long is moſt frequent in the Firſt, *E* long in the Second, *E* or *I* ſhort in the Third, and *I* long in the Fourth: Only *E* before *bam*, *bas*, *bat*, &c. and before *mus* and *tis*, and *mur* and *mini*, is always long in whatever Conjugation it is found.

But it is to be obſerved, that the *Preterites* and *Supines*, and all the Parts formed from them, (becauſe of the great Irregularity of their middle Syllables, and conſtant Agreement in their laſt Vowel, and in the Terminations ariſing from it in all Conjugations) cannot properly be ſaid to be of any one Conjugation more than another; for there is nothing, for Example, in *Fricui*, *Docui*, *Elicui*, *Amicui*, or in *Fricum*, *Doctum*, *Elicitum*, *Amictum*, or in the Parts that come from them, whereby to diſtinguiſh their Conjugations.

Prima Conjugatio.

AMO.

Vox Activa.

Præcipuæ Partes.

Præſ. Indic.	*Perfect.*	*Sup.*	*Præſ. Infin.*
Am-o,	Am-avi,	am-atum,	am-are.

INDICATIVUS Modus.

Præſens.

Sing.	1	A M-o,
	2	Am-as,
	3	Am-at:
Plur.	1	Am-amus,
	2	Am-atis,
	3	Am-ant.

Imperfectum.

Sing.	1	Am-abam,
	2	Am-abas,
	3	Am-abat:
Plur.	1	Am-abamus,
	2	Am-abatis,
	3	Am-abant.

The Firſt Conjugation.

To Love.

The Active Voice.

The Principal Parts.

Sup.	*Præſ. Infin.*
am-atum,	am-are.

The INDICATIVE Mood.

The Preſent.

1	I *Love*, or *do love*,
2	*Thou loveſt*, or *doſt love*,
3	*He loveth*, or *doth love*:
1	*We love*, or *do love*,
2	*Ye* (or *you*) *love*, or *do love*,
3	*They love*, or *do love*.

The Imperfect.

1	*I loved*, or *did love*,
2	*Thou lovedſt*, or *didſt love*,
3	*He loved*, or *did love*:
1	*We loved*, or *did love*,
2	*Ye loved*, or *did love*,
3	*They loved*, or *did love*.

	Perfectum.	The Perfect.
Sing. 1	Am-avi,	*I have loved**,
2	Am-aviſti,	*Thou haſt loved,*
3	Am-avit:	*He hath loved:*
Plur. 1	Am-avimus,	*We have loved,*
2	Am-aviſtis,	*Ye have loved,*
3	Am-averunt *vel* -avere.	*They have loved.*
	Pluſquamperfectum.	The Pluperfect.
Sing. 1	Am-averam,	*I had loved,*
2	Am-averas,	*Thou hadſt loved,*
3	Am-averat:	*He had loved:*
Plur. 1	Am-averamus,	*We had loved,*
2	Am-averatis,	*Ye had loved,*
3	Am-averant.	*They had loved.*
	Futurum.	The Future.
Sing. 1	Am-abo,	*I ſhall* or *will love,*
2	Am-abis,	*Thou ſhalt* or *wilt love,*
3	Am-abit:	*He ſhall* or *will love:*
Plur. 1	Am-abimus,	*We ſhall* or *will love,*
2	Am-abitis,	*Ye ſhall* or *will love,*
3	Am-abunt.	*They ſhall* or *will love.*

SUBJUNCTIVUS Modus. The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

	Præſens.	The Preſent.
Sing. 1	Am-em,	*I may* or *can love,*
2	Am-es,	*Thou mayſt* or *canſt love,*
3	Am-et:	*He may* or *can love:*
Plur. 1	Am-emus,	*We may* or *can love,*
2	Am-etis,	*Ye may* or *can love,*
3	Am-ent.	*They may* or *can love.*
	Imperfectum.	The Imperfect.
Sing. 1	Am-arem,	*I might, could, would,* or *ſhould*
2	Am-ares,	*Thou mightſt, couldſt, wouldſt,* &c.
3	Am-aret:	*He might, could, would, or ſhould*
Plur. 1	Am-aremus,	*We might, could, would,* or *ſhould*
2	Am-aretis,	*Ye might, could, would,* or *ſhould*
3	Am-arent.	*They might, could, would,* or *ſhould*

love.

* Or, *I loved* or *did love, Thou lovedſt* or *didſt love,* &c. as in the Imperfect.

	Perfectum.		The Perfect.
Sing.	1 Am-averim,	1	*I may have loved,*
	2 Am-averis,	2	*Thou mayst have loved,*
	3 Am-averit :	3	*He may have loved :*
Plur.	1 Am-averimus,	1	*We may have loved,*
	2 Am-averitis,	2	*Ye may have loved,*
	3 Am-averint.	3	*They may have loved.*
	Pluſquamperfectum.		The Pluperfect.
Sing.	1 Am-aviſſem,	1	*I might, could, would,* &c. *have* or
	2 Am-aviſſes,	2	*Thou mightſt, couldſt,* &c. *have* or
	3 Am-aviſſet :	3	*He might, could,* &c. *have* or
Plur.	1 Am-aviſſemus,	1	*We might, could,* &c. *have* or
	2 Am-aviſſetis,	2	*Ye might, could,* &c. *have* or
	3 Am-aviſſent.	3	*They might, could,* &c. *have* or
	Futurum.		The Future.
Sing.	1 Am-avero,	1	*I ſhall have loved,*
	2 Am-averis,	2	*Thou ſhalt have loved,*
	3 Am-averit :	3	*He ſhall have loved :*
Plur.	1 Am-averimus,	1	*We ſhall have loved,*
	2 Am-averitis,	2	*Ye ſhall have loved,*
	3 Am-averint.	3	*They ſhall have loved.*

had loved.

IMPERATIVUS Modus.	The IMPERATIVE Mood.
Præſens.	The Preſent.
Sing. 2 Am-a *vel* am-ato,	2 *Love thou,* or *do thou love,*
3 Am-ato :	3 *Let him love :*
Plur. 2 Am-ate *vel* am-atote,	2 *Love ye,* or *do ye love,*
3 Am-anto.	3 *Let them love.*
INFINITIVUS Modus.	The INFINITIVE Mood.
Præſ. Am-are.	Preſ. *To love.*
Perf. Am-aviſſe.	Perf. *To have* or *had loved.*
Fut. Am-aturum eſſe *v.* fuiſſe.	Fut. *To be about to love.*
PARTICIPIA.	The PARTICIPLES.
Præſ. Am-ans.	Of the Preſent, *Loving.*
Fut. Am-aturus, -a, -um.	Of the Future, *About to love.*
GERUNDIA.	The GERUNDS.
Nom. Am-andum,	Nom. *Loving.*
Gen. Am-andi,	Gen. *Of loving.*

Dat.	Am-ando,	Dat.	*To loving.*
Acc.	Am-andum,	Acc.	*Loving.*
Abl.	Am-ando.	Abl.	*From, in, or by loving.*
	SUPINA.		The Supines.
Prius,	Am-atum.		Firſt, *To love,*
Poſterius,	Am-atu.		Laſt, *To love,* or *to be loved.*

VOX PASSIVA. *The* Passive Voice.

Amor, amatus, amari.

INDICATIVUS Modus. The INDICATIVE Mood.

	Præſens:		The Preſent.	
Sing.	1 Am-or,	1	*I am loved,*	
Sing.	2 Am-aris *vel* -are,	2	*Thou art loved,*	
Sing.	3 Am-atur:	3	*He is loved:*	
Plur.	1 Am-amur,	1	*We are loved,*	
Plur.	2 Am-amini,	2	*Ye are loved,*	
Plur.	3 Am-antur.	3	*They are loved.*	
	Imperfectum.		The Imperfect.	
Sing.	1 Am-abar,	1	*I was*	loved.
Sing.	2 Am-abaris *vel* -abare,	2	*Thou waſt* [*wert*]	loved.
Sing.	3 Am-abatur:	3	*He was*	loved.
Plur.	1 Am-abamur,	1	*We were*	loved.
Plur.	2 Am-abamini,	2	*Ye were*	loved.
Plur.	3 Am-abantur.	3	*They were*	loved.
	Perfectum.		The Perfect.	
Sing.	Am-atus 1 ſum *vel* fui,	1	*I have been*	loved.
Sing.	Am-atus 2 es *vel* fuiſti,	2	*Thou haſt been*	loved.
Sing.	Am-atus 3 eſt *vel* fuit:	3	*He hath been*	loved.
Plur.	Am-ati 1 ſumus *vel* fuimus,	1	*We have been*	loved.
Plur.	Am-ati 2 eſtis *vel* fuiſtis,	2	*Ye have been*	loved.
Plur.	Am-ati 3 ſunt fuerunt *v.* fuere	3	*They have been*	loved.
	Pluſquamperfectum.		The Pluperfect.	
Sing.	Am-atus 1 eram *vel* fueram,	1	*I had been*	loved.
Sing.	Am-atus 2 eras *vel* fueras,	2	*Thou hadſt been*	loved.
Sing.	Am-atus 3 erat *vel* fuerat:	3	*He had been*	loved.
Plur.	Am-ati 1 eramus *v.* fueramus,	1	*We had been*	loved.
Plur.	Am-ati 2 eratis *vel* fueratis,	2	*Ye had been*	loved.
Plur.	Am-ati 3 erant *vel* fuerant.	3	*They had been*	loved.
	Futurum.		The Future.	
Sing.	1 Am-abor,	1	*I ſhall* or *will be*	loved.
Sing.	2 Am-aberis *vel* -abere,	2	*Thou ſhalt* or *wilt be*	loved.
Sing.	3 Am-abitur:	3	*He ſhall* or *will be*	loved.

Plur.	1 Am-abimur,	1 *We ſhall* or *will be*	loved.
	2 Am-abimini,	2 *Ye ſhall* or *will be*	
	3 Am-abuntur.	3 *They ſhall* or *will be*	

SUBJUNCTIVUS Modus. The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

Præſens. The Preſent.

Sing.	1 Am-er,	1 *I may* or *can be*	loved.
	2 Am-eris *vel* -ere,	2 *Thou mayſt* or *canſt be*	
	3 Am-etur :	3 *He may* or *can be*	
Plur.	1 Am-emur,	1 *We may* or *can be*	
	2 Am-emini,	2 *Ye may* or *can be*	
	3 Am-entur.	3 *They may* or *can be*	

Imperfectum. The Imperfect.

Sing.	1 Am-arer,	1 *I might, could, would,* &c.	be loved.
	2 Am-areris *vel* -arere,	2 *Thou mightſt, couldſt,* &c.	
	3 Am-aretur :	3 *He might, could,* &c.	
Plur.	1 Am-aremur,	1 *We might, could,* &c.	
	2 Am-aremini,	2 *Ye might, could,* &c.	
	3 Am-arentur.	3 *They might, could,* &c.	

Perfectum. The Perfect.

Sing.	Am-atus	1 fim *vel* fuerim,	1 *I may have been*	loved.
		2 fis *vel* fueris,	2 *Thou mayſt have been*	
		3 fit *vel* fuerit :	3 *He may have been*	
Plur.	Am-ati	1 fimus *vel* fuerimus,	1 *We may have been*	
		2 fitis *vel* fueritis,	2 *Ye may have been*	
		3 fint *vel* fuerint.	3 *They may have been*	

Pluſquamperfectum. The Pluperfect.

Sing.	Am-atus	1 eſſem *vel* fuiſſem,	1 *I might, could,* &c. *have* or	had been loved.
		2 eſſes *vel* fuiſſes,	2 *Thou mightſt,* &c. *have* or	
		3 eſſet *vel* fuiſſet :	3 *He might,* &c. *have* or	
Plur.	Am-ati	1 eſſemus *v.* fuiſſemus,	1 *We might,* &c. *have* or	
		2 eſſetis *vel* fuiſſetis,	2 *Ye might,* &c. *have* or	
		3 eſſent *vel* fuiſſent.	3 *They might,* &c. *have* or	

Futurum. The Future.

Sing.	Am-atus	1 fuero,	1 *I ſhall have been*	loved.
		2 fueris,	2 *Thou ſhalt have been*	
		3 fuerit :	3 *He ſhall have been*	
Plur.	Am-atus	1 fuerimus,	1 *We ſhall have been*	
		2 fueritis,	2 *Ye ſhall have been*	
		3 fuerint.	3 *They ſhall have been*	

IMPERATIVUS Modus. The IMPERATIVE Mood.

Præſens. The Preſent.

Sing.	2 Am-are *vel* -ator,	2 *Be thou loved,*	
	3 Am-ator :	3 *Let him be loved* :	

Plur.	2 Am-amini,	2 *Be ye loved,*
	3 Am-antor.	3 *Let them be loved.*
INFINITIVUS Modus.		The INFINITIVE Mood.
Præſ.	Am-ari.	*To be loved.*
Perf.	Am-atum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.	*To have* or *had been loved.*
Fut.	Am-atum iri.	*To be about to be loved.*
PARTICIPIA.		The PARTICIPLES.
Perfecti temporis,	Am-atus, -a, -um.	Of the Perfect, *Loved.*
Futuri,	Am-andus, -a, -um.	Of the Fut. *To be loved.*

Secunda Conjugatio.

VOX ACTIVA.

Doceo, docui, doctum, docere.

INDICATIVUS.

	Sing. 1	2	3	*Plur.* 1	2	3
Pr.	Doc-eo,	-es,	-et :	-emus,	-etis,	-ent.
Imp.	Doc-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat :	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Perf.	Doc-ui,	-uiſti,	-uit :	-uimus,	-uiſtis,	-uerunt, -uere.
Pluſ.	Doc-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat :	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
Fut.	Doc-ebo,	-ebis,	-ebit :	-ebimus,	-ebitis,	-ebunt.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr.	Doc-eam,	-eas,	-eat :	-eamus,	-eatis,	-eant.
Imp.	Doc-erem,	-eres,	-eret :	-eremus,	-eretis,	-erent.
Perf.	Doc-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit :	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
Pluſ.	Doc-uiſſem,	-uiſſes,	-uiſſet :	-uiſſemus,	-uiſſetis,	-uiſſent.
Fut.	Doc-uero,	-ueris,	-uerit :	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præſ.	Doc- -e, -eto :	-ete, -etote,	-ento.

INFINITIVUS.	*SUPINA.*	*PARTICIPIA.*	*GERUNDIA.*
Præſ. Doc-ere.	1 Doc-tum.	*Pr.* Doc-ens.	Doc-endum,
Perf. Doc-uiſſe.	2 Doc-tu.	*Fut.* Doc-turus.	Doc-endi,
Fut. Doc-turum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.			Doc-endo.

VOX PASSIVA.

Doceor, doctus, doceri.

INDICATIVUS.

		Sing.		*Plur.*
Pr.	Doc-eor,	-eris, -ere,	-etur:	-emur, -emini, -entur.
Im.	Doc-ebar,	-ebaris, -ebare,	-ebatur:	-ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.
Fut.	Doc-ebor,	-eberis, -ebere,	-ebitur:	-ebimur, -ebimini, -ebuntur.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr.	Doc-ear,	-earis, -eare,	-eatur:	-eamur, -eamini, -eantur.
Im.	Doc-erer,	-ereris, -erere,	-eretur:	-eremur, -eremini, -erentur.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præſ.	Doc-	-ere, -etor,	-etor:	-emini, -entor.

INFINITIVUS.

Præſ. Doc-eri.
Perf. Doc-tum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.
Fut. Doc-tum iri.

PARTICIPIA.

Perf. Doc-tus, -a, -um.
Fut. Doc-endus, -a, -um.

Tertia Conjugatio.

VOX ACTIVA.

Lego, legi, lectum, legere.

INDICATIVUS.

		Sing. 1	2	3	*Plur.* 1	2	3
Præſ.	Leg-o,	-is,	-it:		-imus,	-itis,	-unt.
Imp.	Leg-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat:		-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Perf.	Leg-i,	-iſti,	-it:		-imus,	-iſtis,	-erunt, -ere.
Pluſ.	Leg-eram,	-eras,	-erat:		-eramus,	-eratis,	-erant.
Fut.	Leg-am,	-es,	-et:		-emus,	-etis,	-ent.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præſ.	Leg-am,	-as,	-at:	-amus,	-atis,	-ant.
Imp.	Leg-erem,	-eres,	-eret:	-eremus,	-eretis,	-erent.

Perf. Leg-erim, -eris, -erit : -erimus, -eritis, -erint.
Pluſ. Leg-iſſem, -iſſes, -iſſet : -iſſemus, -iſſetis, -iſſent.
Fut. Leg-ero, -eris, -erit : -erimus, -eritis, -erint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præſ. Leg- { -e, -ito, } ito : { -ite, -itote, } -unto.

INFINITIVUS.	*SUPINA.*	*PARTICIPIA.*	*GERUNDIA.*
Præſ. Leg-ere.	1 Lec-tum.	*Pr.* Leg-ens.	Leg-endum,
Perf. Leg-iſſe.	2 Lec-tu.	*Fut.* Lec-turus.	Leg-endi,
Fut. Lec-turum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.			Leg-endo.

VOX PASSIVA.

Legor, lectus, legi.

INDICATIVUS.

	Sing.		*Plur.*		
r. Leg-or,	{ -eris, -ere, }	-itur :	-imur,	-imini,	-untur.
n. Leg-ebar,	{ -ebaris, -ebare, }	-ebatur:	-ebamur,	-ebamini,	-ebantur.
ut. Leg-ar,	{ -eris, -ere, }	-etur :	-emur,	-emini,	-entur.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

r. Leg-ar,	{ -aris, -are, }	-atur :	-amur,	-amini,	-antur.
. Leg-erer,	{ -ereris, -erere, }	-eretur :	-eremur,	-eremini,	-erentur.

IMPERATIVUS.

æſ. Leg- { -ere, -itor, } -itor : -imini, -untor.

INFINITIVUS.	*PARTICIPIA.*
æſ. Leg-i.	*Perf.* Lec-tus, -a, -um.
f. Lec-tum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.	*Fut.* Leg-endus, -a, -um.
. Lec-tum iri.	

Quarta Conjugatio.

VOX ACTIVA.

Audio, audivi, auditum, audire.

INDICATIVUS.

	Sing. 1	2	3	*Plur.* 1	2	3
Pr.	Audio,	-is,	-it :	-imus,	-itis,	-iunt.
Im.	Aud-iebam,	-iebas,	-iebat :	-iebamus,	-iebatis,	-iebant.
Perf.	Aud-ivi,	-iviſti,	-ivit :	-ivimus,	-iviſtis,	-iverunt, -ivere.
Pluſ.	Aud-iveram,	-iveras,	-iverat :	-iveramus,	-iveratis,	-iverant.
Fut.	Aud-iam,	-ies,	-iet :	-iemus,	-ietis,	-ient.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr.	Aud-iam,	-ias,	-iat :	-iamus,	-iatis,	-iant.
Im.	Aud-irem,	-ires,	-iret :	-iremus,	-iretis,	-irent.
Perf.	Aud-iverim,	-iveris,	-iverit :	-iverimus,	-iveritis,	-iverint.
Pluſ.	Aud-iviſſem,	-iviſſes,	-iviſſet :	-iviſſemus,	-iviſſetis,	-iviſſent.
Fut.	Aud-ivero,	-iveris,	-iverit :	-iverimus,	-iveritis,	-iverint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Pr. Aud-	-i, -ito,	ito :	-ite, -itote, -iunto.

INFINITIVUS.	*SUPINA.*	*PARTICIPIA.*	*GERUNDIA.*
Præſ. Aud-ire.	1 Aud-itum.	*Pr.* Aud-iens.	Aud-iendum,
Perf. Aud-iviſſe.	2 Aud-itu.	*Fut.* Aud-iturus.	Aud-iendi,
Fut. Aud-iturum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.			Aud-iendo.

VOX PASSIVA.

Audior, auditus, audiri.

INDICATIVUS.

	Sing.		*Plur.*		
Pr. Aud-ior,	-iris, -ire,	-itur :	-imur,	-imini,	-iuntur.
Im. Aud-iebar,	-iebaris, -iebare,	-iebatur :	-iebamur,	-iebamini,	-iebant.
Fut. Aud-iar,	-ieris, -iere,	-ietur :	-iemur,	-iemini,	-ientur.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Aud-iar,	-iaris, -iare,	-iatur :	-iamur,	-iamini,	-iantur.
Im. Aud-irer,	-ireris, -irere,	-iretur :	-iremur,	-iremini,	-irentur.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præſ. Aud- { -ire, / -itor, } -itor : -imini, -iuntor.

INFINITIVUS.

Præſ. Aud-iri.
Perf. Aud-itum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.
Fut. Aud-itum iri.

PARTICIPIA.

Perf. Aud-itus, -a, -um.
Fut. Aud-iendus, -a, -um.

¶ Note, *That in the Examples of the* Second, Third, *and* Fourth Conjugations, *we have omitted ſuch Parts of the* Paſſive Voice *as are ſupplied by the* Participle Perfect *with the Verb* Sum, viz. *The* Perfect *and* Pluperfect *of the* Indicative, *and the* Perfect, Pluperfect, *and* Future *of the* Subjunctive, *as being the ſame in all* Conjugations *with the Example of the* Firſt, *the Change of the* Participle *only excepted: But it is carefully to be obſerved, that the* Participle *being an* Adjective, *muſt agree in* Gender, Number, *and* Caſe, *with its* Subſtantive, *or (which is the ſame thing) with the* Perſon *before it.*

I. REMARKS, ſhewing when a LATIN Verb is to be rendered otherwiſe in ENGLISH than in the foregoing Examples.

1. WHEN the Continuation of a thing is ſignified, the Engliſh Verb may be varied in all its Tenſes by the Participle in ING, with the Verb AM; as,

Preſ. *I am reading,*
Imp. *I was reading,*
Perf. *I have been reading,*
Plup. *I had been reading,*
Fut. *I ſhall be reading,*
} for { *I read.* / *I did read.* / *I have read.* / *I had read.* / *I ſhall read.*

So likewiſe in the *Paſſive* Voice, *The Houſe is building*, Domus ædificatur; *The Leſſon was preſcribing*, Lectio præſcribebatur. Sometimes *a* is ſet before the Participle; as, *While the Houſe is a-building, It is a-doing, He is a-dying.*

2. When a Queſtion is aſked, the Nominative Caſe or Perſon is ſet after the Verb, or the Sign of the Verb; as, *Love I? Do I love? Can I love? Should he be loved?*

3. We have made THOU the ſecond Perſon Singular, to diſtinguiſh it from the Plural; But it is cuſtomary with us, (as alſo with the *French*, and others,) tho' we ſpeak but to one particular Perſon, to uſe the Plural YOU, and never THOU, but when we addreſs ourſelves to Almighty God, or otherwiſe when we ſignify Familiarity, Diſdain, or Contempt.

4. The *Perfect* of the *Indicative* is often Engliſhed as the *Imperfect*; as, *Nunquam amavi hunc hominem*, I never loved [*or* did love] this Man.

See a Train of Examples in *Ovid. Metamorph. lib.* 1. from *v.* 21. to 39.

5. The PERFECT Tenſe is frequently Engliſhed by HAD after *Antequam*, *Poſtquam*, *Ubi* or *Ut*, for *Poſtquam*: as, *Poſtquam ſuperavimus Iſthmum*, After we had [were] paſſed over the Iſthmus, *Ovid. Hæc ubi dicta dedit*, When he had ſpoken theſe Words, *Liv. Ut me ſalutavit, ſtatim Romam profectus eſt*, After he had ſaluted me, *&c.* Cic.

6. We have choſen MAY, CAN, MIGHT, COULD, *&c.* for the Engliſh of the SUBJUNCTIVE Mood, becauſe theſe are the moſt frequent Signs of it, and diſtinguiſh it beſt from other Moods: But very often it is the ſame with the *Indicative*, ſave only that it hath ſome *Conjunction* or *Indefinite* Word before it; ſuch as *If*, *Seeing*, *Leſt*, *That*, *Although*, *I wiſh*, &c.; as, *Si amem*, If I love; *Ne amem*, Leſt I love; *Cauſa eſt cur amem*, It is the Cauſe why I love, *Ovid.* And frequently it hath both; as, *Oro ut ames*, I entreat that you may love, *Idem.*

7. The PRESENT of the *Subjunctive* after *Quaſi*, *Tanquam*, and the like, is ſometimes Engliſhed as the Imperfect; as, *Quaſi intelligant qualis ſit*, As if they underſtood what kind of Perſon he is, *Cic.*

8. When a Queſtion is aſked, the *Preſent* of the *Subjunctive* is frequently Engliſhed by SHALL or SHOULD; as, *Eloquar an ſileam?* Shall I ſpeak or be ſilent? *Virg. Singula quid referam*, Why ſhould I mention every thing? *Ovid.* Likewiſe after *Non eſt quod*; as, *Non eſt* (ſuppl. *cauſa*) *quod eas*, There is no Reaſon why you ſhould go, *or* you need not go. Sometimes it is Engliſhed by WOULD; as, *In facinus juraſſe putes*, You would think they had ſworn to [commit] Wickedneſs, *Ovid.*

9. We have Engliſhed the PERFECT of the *Subjunctive* in RIM by MAY HAVE, (as, *Ne fruſtra hi tales viri venerint*, That ſuch Men as theſe may not have come in vain, *Cic.*; *Forſitan audieris*, You may perhaps have heard it;) to diſtinguiſh it from the *Preſent* and *Pluperfect*, by the Signs of which it is alſo moſt frequently Engliſhed; as, *Ut ſic dixerim*, That I may ſo ſpeak. *Ubi ego audiverim?* Where ſhould I have heard it? *Unus homo tantas ſtrages ediderit?* Could one Man make ſo great a Slaughter? *Virg. Fortaſſe errarim?* Perhaps I might be in an Error? *Plin. Oratores quos viderim peritiſſimi*, The ableſt Orators I have ſeen [*or* could ſee,] *Quintil.*

10. This *Perfect* in RIM ſometimes inclines very much to a Future Signification; and then it is Engliſhed by SHOULD, WOULD, COULD, CAN, WILL, SHALL; as, *Citius crediderim*, I ſhould ſooner believe, *Juv. Libenter audierim*, I would gladly hear, *Cic.*; *Ciceronem cuicunque eorum facile oppoſuerim*, I could eaſily match *Cicero* with any of them, *Quintil. Non facile dixerim*, I cannot well tell, *Cic.*; *Nec tamen excluſerim alios*, And yet I will not exclude others, *Plin.*; *Si paululum modo quid te fugerit, perierim*, If you but trip in the leaſt, I ſhall be undone, *Ter.* But all theſe Ways of ſpeaking, tho' indeed they reſpect the Future as to the Execution, yet they ſeem alſo to look a little beyond it, to a time when their Futurity ſhall be paſt; and ſo come near in Signification to the Future in RO.

11. The *Perfect* of the *Subjunctive* after *Quaſi*, *Tanquam*, and the like, may ſometimes be Engliſhed by HAD; as, *Quaſi affuerim*, As if I had been preſent, *Plaut.*; *Perinde ac ſi jam vicerint*, As if they had already overcome, *Cic.*

12. The PLUPERFECT in ISSEM is ſometimes Engliſhed by SHOULD; as, *Imperaret quod vellet, quodcunque imperaviſſet, ſe eſſe facturos*, He might command what he pleaſed, whatever he commanded [ſhould command] they would do, *Cæſ. Fœdus ictum eſt his legibus, ut cujus populi eo certamine victiſſent is alteri imperaret*, An Agreement was made on th

Terms, that that People whoſe Countrymen ſhould be victorious in that Combat, ſhould have the Sovereignty over the other, *Liv.* And this happens when a Thing is ſignified as future at a certain paſt Time referred to; and commonly takes Place, when what was formerly ſaid directly, is afterwards recited indirectly; as, *Ne dubita, dabitur quodcunque optaris*, Doubt not, whatſoever thou ſhalt chuſe ſhall be given thee, *Ovid. Sol Phaëthonti facturum ſe eſſe dixit, quicquid optaſſet*; The *Sun* told *Phaeton* that he would do whatſoever he ſhould chuſe, *Cic.* Where it is worth noticing, That what was the *Future* of the *Subjunctive* in the direct Speech, becomes the *Pluperfect* in the indirect Recital of it. See *Turner's* Exerciſes, *p.* 21. *&c.* But, as we have ſaid, *p.* 38. the *Pluperfect*, notwithſtanding its coming in the Place of a *Future*, ſtill retains its own proper compound Time, that is, it was prior to a Thing now paſt at the Time of the Recital by *Cicero*, though it was future when firſt ſpoken by the *Sun*. And therefore there is no Reaſon for making this Termination in *iſſem*, a *Future* Tenſe, as Mr *Turner* does.

13. Though the proper Engliſh of the FUTURE in RO be SHALL HAVE, yet generally the HAVE or the SHALL, and frequently both, are omitted; as, *Qui Antonium oppreſſerit, is bellum confecerit*, He who ſhall cut off *Antony*, ſhall put an End to the War, *Cic.*; *Haud deſinam donec perfecero hoc*, I will not give over till I have effected this, *Ter.*; *Si negaverit*, If he denies it, *Cic.* Sometimes it is Engliſhed by WILL; as, *Dixerit fortaſſe aliquis*, Somebody will perhaps ſay, *Cic.*; *Aut conſolando, aut conſilio, aut re juvero*, I will aſſiſt you either by comforting you, or with Counſel, or with Money, *Idem.* But tho' we thus render the *Future* in RO in our Language, and tho' (which is more material) very frequently it and the *Future* of the *Indicative* are uſed promiſcuouſly; yet I cannot be perſuaded, that, in any inſtance, the formal Significations of theſe are the ſame, as Mr *Johnſon* contends, *p.* 339. but ſtill think, with the great *Voſſius*, that the *Future* in RO is always a *Future-perfect*, that is, that there is a Time inſinuated when a Thing yet future ſhall be finiſhed or paſt, and that even when a *Future* of the *Indicative* is joined with it, which in Order of Time ſhould be done before it; as, *Pergratum mihi feceris ſi diſputabis*, You ſhall have done [ſhall do] me a great Favour, if you ſhall diſpute, *Cic.* For what hinders that we may not faintly hint at the finiſhing of an Action yet future, without formally conſidering the finiſhing of another Action on which it depends; and on the contrary? But if the promiſcuous Uſage of Tenſes one for another be ſufficient to make them formally the ſame, then we ſhall confound all Tenſes, and overthrow the very Arguments Mr *Johnſon* makes uſe of againſt *Sanctius*, with reſpect to the Tenſes of the Infinitive.

14. The TO of the INFINITIVE is generally omitted after *May*, *Can*, *Might*, *Would*, *Could*, (which are ſometimes Verbs themſelves, and not the bare Signs of them:) alſo after *Muſt*, *Bid*, *Dare*, *Let*, *Help* and *Make*.

15. But what is moſt to be regarded in the *Infinitive*, is, that when it hath an Accuſative before it, it is commonly Engliſhed as the Indicative Mood, the Particle THAT being ſometimes put before it, but oftener underſtood. And it is carefully to be remarked, That the ſame Tenſes of the Infinitive are differently Engliſhed, according as the preceding Verb varies its Tenſes,—as will appear in the following Scheme:

Dicit me ſcribere,	He ſays [that] I write.
Dixit me ſcribere,	He ſaid [that] I was writing.
Dicet me ſcribere,	He ſhall ſay [that] I am writing.

Dicit me ſcripſiſſe, He ſays [that] I wrote, or did write.
Dixit me ſcripſiſſe, He ſaid [that] I had written.
Dicet me ſcripſiſſe, He ſhall ſay [that] I have written, or did write.
Dicit me ſcripturum [*eſſe*] He ſays [that] I will write.
Dixit me ſcripturum, [*eſſe*] He ſaid [that] I would write.
Dicet me ſcripturum [*eſſe*] He ſhall ſay [that] I will write.
Dicit me ſcripturum [*fuiſſe*] He ſays [that] I would have written.
Dixit me ſcripturum [*fuiſſe*] He ſaid [that] I would have written.
Dicet me ſcripturum [*fuiſſe*] He ſhall ſay [that] I would have written.

It will be of great Uſe to accuſtom the Learner to render the Infinitive after this Manner, both in *Engliſh* and *Latin*, eſpecially after he has been taught ſomething of Conſtruction: And then to cauſe him vary the Accuſative *Me* into *te*, *ſe*, *illum*, *hominem*, *fœminam*, &c. and theſe again into the Plural, *Nos*, *vos*, *ſe*, *illos*, *homines*, *fœminas*, &c. But he muſt be careful to make the Participles agree with them in Gender, Number, and Caſe.

NOTE, 1. That when the preceding Verb is of the *Preſent* or *Future* Tenſe, the *Fut.* of the *Infinit.* with *eſſe*, is rendered by SHALL or WILL; and when it is of the *Perfect* Tenſe, the *Fut.* of the *Infinit.* is rendered by WOULD, as in the Examples above; and ſometimes by SHOULD; as, *Dixi te ſciturum eſſe*, I ſaid that you ſhould know.

NOTE, 2. That when the preceding Verb is of the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect* Tenſes, the *Engliſh* of the *Infinitive* is the ſame as when it is of the *Perfect*.

16. The *Perfect* of the *Indicative* and *Subjunctive Paſſive*, made up with *Sum* or *Sim*, are Engliſhed by AM, ART, IS, ARE, inſtead of HAVE BEEN, when the thing is ſignified to be juſt now paſt; as, *Vulneratus ſum*, I am wounded; *Opus finitum eſt*, The work is finiſhed; *Cum tempora mutata ſint*, Since the Times are changed.

17. When it is made up by *fui*, it is frequently Engliſhed by WAS, WAST, WERE, WERT; as, *Roma fuit capta*, Rome was taken: As is alſo what is called the *Pluperfect*, with *eram* and *eſſem*; as, *Labor finitus erat*, The Labour was finiſhed; *Si labor finitus eſſet*, If the Labour were finiſhed.

II. REMARKS on the LATIN CONJUGATIONS.

1. A Great Part of the *Paſſive* Voice, and ſome of the *Active*, is made up of two of its own *Participles* and the auxiliary Verb *Sum*, (of which you have the full Conjugation, *p.* 60.) after this Manner:

The Participle Perfect with	*Sum* or *fui*	makes the	Perf.	Indicat.
	eram or *fueram*		Plup.	
	ſim or *fuerim*		Perf.	Subjunct.
	eſſem or *fuiſſem*		Plup.	
	fuero		Fut.	
	eſſe or *fuiſſe*		Perf.	Infinit.
The Participle Fut. Act. with	*eſſe* or *fuiſſe*		Fut.	Infinit.

Paſſive.
Active.

2. Having, *p.* 38. laid it down as a probable Opinion, that every Part of a Verb, with all its *Participles*, have a certain fixed Time, ſimple or compound, which they formally and of their own Nature ſignify, it will perhaps be here expected that I ſhould account for that great Variety that is found

O doctissimum Magistri

in the Paſſive Voice. To put this Matter in the cleareſt Light I am able, I muſt premiſe another Diviſion of the *Tenſes*, viz. into PASSING and PAST: or, into ſuch as import the Continuance of an Action or Thing, without regard to the ending or finiſhing of it; and ſuch as import that the Thing is finiſhed (or to be finiſhed) and done. Of the firſt ſort are the *Preſent*, *Imperfect* and *Future-imperfect*; of the ſecond ſort are the *Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, and *Future-perfect*. See *p.* 37. From this Diviſion of the Tenſes, together with what we have formerly ſaid, we are furniſhed with an eaſy Method of diſtinguiſhing all the Parts of the Paſſive. Thus, for inſtance, let the ſubject of Diſcourſe be the building of an Houſe. 1. When I ſay, *Domus ædificatur*, I mean that it is juſt now a-building, but not finiſhed. 2. When *Ædificabatur*; that it was then, or at a certain paſt Time, a-building, but not then finiſhed. 3. *Ædificabitur*; that ſome time hence it ſhall be a-building, without any formal Regard to the finiſhing of it. But when I make uſe of the *Participle-perfect*, I always ſignify a Thing completed and ended; but with theſe ſubdiſtinctions: 1. *Ædificata eſt*; I mean ſimply, that it is finiſhed, without any Regard to the Time when. 2. *Ædificata fuit*; it is finiſhed, and ſome Time ſince has intervened. 3. *Ædificata erat*; it was finiſhed at a certain paſt Time referred to, with which it was cotemporary. 4. *Ædificata fuerat*; it was finiſhed before a certain paſt Time referred to, to which it was prior. 5. *Ædificata erit*; it ſhall be finiſhed ſome Time hereafter, either without regard to a particular Time when, or with reſpect to a certain Time yet future, with which its finiſhing ſhall be cotemporary. 6. And laſtly, *Ædificata fuerit*; it ſhall be finiſhed and paſt before another Thing yet future, to which its finiſhing ſhall be prior. And thus we have nine different Times, or Complications of Times, without confounding them with one another. But then how comes it to paſs, that theſe are ſo frequently uſed promiſcuouſly? I anſwer, That this proceeds from one or more of theſe four Reaſons: 1. Becauſe it very frequently happens in diſcourſe, that we have no occaſion particularly to conſider theſe various Relations and Complications of Times; and it is the ſame Thing to our Purpoſe whether the Thing is, or was done, or a-doing; or whether it was done juſt now, or ſome time ago; or whether another Thing was (or ſhall be) cotemporary with, or prior to it: And the Matter being thus, we reckon ourſelves at liberty to take ſeveral Parts of the Verb at random, as being ſecure not only of being underſtood, but alſo, that in theſe Circumſtances, whatever we pitch on, even when examined by the Rules above, ſhall be found literally true. 2. It is uſual with us to ſtate ourſelves as preſent with, and as it were Eye-witneſſes of, the Things we relate, tho' really they were tranſacted long before; whence it is that we frequently uſe the preſent inſtead of ſome paſt Time. 3. It is to be remarked that there are ſome Verbs, the Action whereof is in ſome Senſe finiſhed when begun; in which Caſe it will ſometimes be all one whether we uſe the paſſing or paſt Tenſes. And, 4. The Preſent Tenſe (which, ſtrictly ſpeaking, is gone before we pronoúnce it) is generally taken in a large Acceptation, and ſometimes uſed for the Future, when we ſignify that the Execution is very near, or (according to *Perizonius*) when, together with the Action, we take in alſo the Preparation to it. The Brevity we are confined to will not allow us to illuſtrate theſe Things with Examples: But by them, I think we may account for the promiſcuous Uſage of the Tenſes, in both Voices; and what cannot be reduced to theſe, ſeems to be an Abuſe of the Language, and, being very rarely to be met with, and perhaps only among the Poets, ought not to be made a Common Standard. I ſhall only

add for a proof that these Tenses are not always to be used indifferently; that when we signify a Thing to be just now finished, we cannot use *fui*, or *fuerim*, or *fuisse*, but *sum*, *sim*, and *esse*.

3. Whether the Learner should be obliged to get by Heart these Parts of the *Passive* that are supplied by *Sum*, or if they should be referred to Construction (to which they seem more naturally to belong,) I leave to the discretion of the Master, and therefore have put them in a smaller Character.

4. Besides these Parts which are thus made up, all the other Parts may be resolved into its own Participles, and the Verb *Sum*, though their Significations are not precisely the same; as,

Amo,	*amabam*,	*amavi*,	*amaveram*,	*amabo*.
Sum amans,	*eram amans*,	*fui amans*,	*fueram amans*,	*ero amans*, or *sum amaturus*.
Amor,	*amabar*,	*amabor*,	*amer*,	*amarer*.
Sum amatus,	*eram amatus*,	*ero amatus*,	*amatus sim*,	*amatus essem*,

5. The Participle in RUS with the Verb SUM is frequently used instead of the *Future* of the *Indicative*, especially if *Purpose* or *Intention* is signified; as, *Profecturus sum*, or *Proficiscar*, I will go, *or* I am to go: And with *Sim* and *essem* instead of the *Future-imperfect*, or *Pluperfect* of the *Subjunctive*; as, *Non dubito quin sit facturus*, I doubt not but he would do it; *Non dubitavi quin esset facturus*, I doubted not but he would do it; and not *quin fecerit*, or *faceret*, or *fecisset*.

6. We have not joined ERO with FUERO for the *Future* of the *Subjunctive*, because we thought it incongruous to couple Words of different Moods: Though it must be owned, that it comes nearer in Signification to the *Fut.* of the *Subjunctive* than that of the *Indicative*; as *Ovid. Qui cum victus erit*, is much the same as *victus fuerit*: And so these ancient Lawyers, *Scævola*, *Brutus*, and *Manilius*, understood the Words of the *Atinian* Law, *Quod subreptum erit, ejus rei æterna auctoritas esto.* But that a *Preterite* Time is there insinuated, is owing not to the Word *erit*, but to the *Preterite Participle* with which it is joined, as they learnedly argue. See *Aulus Gellius*, *lib.* XVII. *cap.* 7.

7. We have omitted the Termination MINOR in the second Person Plural of the *Imperative*, not thinking it fit to make that an ordinary Standard (as the common *Rudiments* do) which is to be found only once or twice in *Plautus*, Epid. 5. 2. *Facto opere arbitraminor*; and Pseud. 2. 2. *Pariter progrediminor.*

8. For the same Reason we have excluded the ancient Termination ASSO in the *Future Subjunctive* of the first Conjugation; as, *Excantasso* in the Laws of the 12 Tables; *Levasso* in *Ennius*; *Abjurasso*, *Invitasso*, *Cœnasso*, *Irritasso*, *Servasso*, &c. in *Plautus*; for *Excantavero*, *Levavero*, &c. To which may be added ESSO of the second Conjugation; as, *Licesso*, Idem; *prohibesso*, Cic. for *Licuerit*, *prohibuerit*: To these some add *Jusso* for *jussero*, in that of *Virg. Æn.* 11. *v.* 467.

Cætera, qua jusso, mecum manus inferat arma.

But tho' I was once of that Opinion, yet I now incline with *Vossius* to think that it is only a *Syncope*; but not for the Reason brought for it by him, namely, that the other Examples in *sso* change *r* into *ss*; as, *Levaro*, *levasso*; but because I believe these old Futures were formed not from the common Futures in *ero*, as he supposes, but from the second Person Singular of the Present of the Indic. by adding *so*; as, *levas*, *levasso*; *prohibes*, *prohibesso*: According to which Rule *Jubeo* must have formed *jubesso*, not *jussero*,

9. Upon the ſame Account we have omitted the Future of the Infinitive in ASSERE, formed from ASSO; as, *Impetraſſere, reconciliaſſere, expugnaſſere,* in *Plautus,* for *impetraturum eſſe,* &c.

10. Tho' we frequently meet with *amaturus* and *amatus eſſe* vel *fuiſſe,* &c. in the *Nominative,* as, *Dicitur amaturus eſſe;* yet we have contented ourſelves with the Accuſative *amaturum* and *amatum,* as moſt common, reſerving the Diſtinction between theſe to Conſtruction. [See Page 85.]

11. The *Future* of the *Infinitive Paſſive* is made up of the *Firſt Supine* and IRI the Infinitive Paſſive of EO; and therefore it is not varied in Numbers and Genders, as the Parts made up of the Participle with *Sum.*

12. But the Supine with IRE is not the Future of the Infinitive Active, as ſome teach; for ſuch Phraſes as theſe, *Amatum ire, Doctum ire,* are rather of the Preſent than Future Tenſe.

13. The Participle in DUS with *eſſe* and *fuiſſe,* is not properly the Future of the Infinitive Paſſive, as is commonly believed: For it does not ſo much import *Futurity,* as *Neceſſity, Duty,* or *Merit.* For there is a great Difference between theſe two Sentences, *Dicit literas à ſe ſcriptum iri,* and *Dicit literas a ſe ſcribendas eſſe;* the firſt ſignifying, *That a Letter will be written by him,* or, *That he will write a Letter;* and the ſecond, *That a Letter muſt be written by him,* or, *He is obliged to write a Letter.* For though *Sanctius* and *Meſſieurs de Port Royal* contend that this Participle is ſometimes uſed for ſimple Futurity, yet I think *Perizonius* and *Johnſon* have clearly evinced the contrary.

14. It is to be noted, That the *Imperative* Mood wants the firſt Perſon both Singular and Plural, becauſe no man can or needs command or exhort himſelf: Or, if he does, he muſt juſtle himſelf out of the firſt into the ſecond Perſon; as in that of *Catullus* ſpeaking to himſelf, *At, tu Catulle, deſtinatus obdura;* But you, *Catullus,* continue obſtinate.

15. The *Preſent* of the *Subjunctive* is moſt frequently uſed inſtead of the *Imperative,* eſpecially in forbidding, after *Ne, nemo, nullus,* &c.: as, *Valeas,* Farewell, for *vale; Ne facias,* Do it not, rather than *ne fac.* And ſometimes the *Future* of the *Subjunctive:* as, *Tu videris,* See you to it; *Ne dixeris,* Don't ſay it. And ſometimes alſo the *Future* of the *Indicative;* as, *Non occides,* Thou ſhalt not kill, for *Ne occide,* or *occidito. Sed valebis, meaque negotia videbis,* Cic.; i. e. *Sed vale, meaque negotia vide. Referes ergo hæc et nuncius ibis Pelidæ genitori,* Virg.; i. e. *refer et ito.* But it is to be remarked, that none of theſe are proper *Imperatives:* For to the firſt is underſtood, *oro, rogo, peto,* or the like, with *ut;* as alſo to the ſecond, with *ut* underſtood, or *ne* expreſſed; and the third is only a Command by Conſequence, becauſe of the Authority, Influence, or Power of the Speaker: For which reaſon, and to keep the Moods from interfering with one another, we have excluded theſe from the *Imperative;* though the common *Rudiments* take in the firſt, and *Alvarus* the ſecond and third. However, it is obſervable, that we ſhew moſt Civility and Reſpect when we uſe the *Subjunctive,* and moſt Authority by the *Future* of the *Indicative,* and NTO of the *Imperative;* which laſt is the ordinary Strain in which Laws are delivered. But this Rule is not always followed.

16. The RIS of the ſecond Perſon *Paſſive* is more uſual than RE; and ERUNT of the *Perfect* of the *Indicative Active* than ERE; eſpecially in Proſe; in which, if a Vowel follow, they are very rarely to be met with.

III. REMARKS upon ENGLISH VERBS.

1. AN *Engliſh Verb* hath only two *Tenſes*, diſtinguiſhed by different *Terminations*, and both in the *Active Voice*, *viz.* the *Preſent* and *Preterite*. The *Preſent* is the Verb itſelf, and the *Preterite* is commonly made by adding *ed* to it, or *d*, when it ends in *e*; as, *Fill, filled; Love, loved.*

2. All the other Parts of the *Active*, and the whole *Paſſive*, is made up of the Auxiliary Verbs, *Do, Have, Shall, Will, May, Can*, and *Am*; as in Page 39. and in the Example, *To love*, Page 40. *&c.*

3. An Engliſh Verb hath different Terminations for the *Perſons* of the Singular Number. The *Preſent* hath three or four. The Firſt Perſon is the Verb itſelf; the ſecond ends in *eſt* or *ſt*; the third in *eth, es*, or *s*. The *Preterite* hath only two; the firſt commonly ending in *ed*, and the ſecond in *eſt* or *ſt*. But the third Perſon Sing. of the *Pret.* and all the Perſons Plur. both of it and the *Pref.* cannot otherwiſe be diſtinguiſhed than by the Nom. before them; which therefore can never be omitted, as in the *Latin*.

4. We have two *Participles*, the *Preſent* ending always in *ing*, and the *Preterite* ending regularly in *ed*, but very frequently in *en* and *t*.

5. There are a great many *Irregular Engliſh* Verbs; but it is to be noted, 1. That that *Irregularity* relates only to the Termination of the *Preterite* Tenſe, and the *Paſſive Participle*. 2. That it reaches only ſuch Words as are native, and originally Engliſh. 3. That it is to be found only in Words of one Syllable, or derived from Words of one Syllable. 4. That where the *Preterite* is regular, the *Paſſive Participle* is the ſame with it. Except *Hewed, Mowed, Shewed, Snowed, Sowed*; which have *Hewn, Mown, Shown, Snown, Sown*.

6. Theſe *Irregularities* may be reduced to the following Heads:

(1.) The *d* is changed into *t* after *c, ch, ſh, f, k, p, x*, and after *s* and *th* when pronounced hard; and ſometimes after *l, m, n, r*, when a ſhort Vowel goes before it; as, *Plac't, Snatch't, Fiſh't, Walk't, Dwelt, Smelt.* But when a long Vowel goes before *p*, it is either ſhortened, or changed into a ſhort one; as, *Kept, Slept, Wept, Crept, Swept, Leapt*, from *keep, ſleep, weep, creep, ſweep, leap*: As alſo ſometimes before *l, m, n, r*, and *v* turned into *f*; as, *Feel, felt; Dream, dreamt; Mean, meant; Leave, left.*

(2.) When the *Preſent* ends in *d* or *t* the *Preterite* is ſometimes the ſame with it; as, *Read, Caſt, Hurt, Burſt, Hit, Quit*: And when two Vowels precede, the laſt is left out; as, *Spread, ſpred; Lead, led; Feed, fed; Bleed, bled; Meet, met.* When a Conſonant comes before *d*, it is ſometimes changed into *t*; as, *Bend, bent; Lend, lent; Send, ſent; Rend, rent; Gird, girt.*

(3.) Moſt of the other Irregular Verbs may be comprehended under the following Liſts:

I. *Such as have their Preterite and Participle Paſſive the ſame.*

Awake, awoke.	Find, found.	Pay, paid.	Sting, ſtung.
Abide, abode.	Flee, fled.	Say, ſaid.	Swing, ſwung.
Beſeech, beſought,	Fling, flung.	Seek, ſought.	Swim, ſwum.
Bind, bound.	Grind, ground.	Sell, ſold.	Teach, taught.
Bring, brought.	Gild, gilt.	Sit, ſat.	Tell, told.
Buy, bought.	Hang, hung.	Shine, ſhone.	Think, thought.
Catch, caught.	Hear, heard.	Spin, ſpun.	Work, wrought.
Dig, dug.	Lay, laid.	Spring, ſprung.	Win, won.
Drink, drunk.	Loſe, loſt.	Stand, ſtood.	Wind, wound.
Fight, fought.	Make, made.	Stick, ſtuck.	Wring, wrung.

II. *Such as have the Preterite and Participle different; as,*

Bear,	bore,	born.	Freeze,	froze,	frozen.	Shrink,	ſhrank,	ſhrunk.
Begin,	began,	begun.	Get,	got,	gotten.	Sink,	ſank,	ſunk.
Bid,	bade,	bidden.	Give,	gave,	given.	Slay,	ſlew,	ſlain.
Beat,	beat,	beaten.	Go,	went,	gone.	Slide,	ſlid,	ſlidden.
Bite,	bit,	bitten.	Grow,	grew,	grown.	Smite,	ſmote,	ſmitten.
Blow,	blew,	blown.	Hew,	hewed,	hewn.	Strike,	ſtruck,	ſtricken.
Chid,	chid,	chidden.	Hide,	hid,	hidden.	Speak,	ſpoke,	ſpoken.
Chooſe,	choſe,	choſen.	Hold,	held,	holden.	Spit,	ſpat,	ſpitten.
Cleave,	clove,	cleft.	Know,	knew,	known.	Strive,	ſtrove,	ſtriven.
Come,	came,	come.	Ly,	lay,	lain.	Swear,	ſwore,	ſworn.
Crow,	crew,	crow'd.	Ride,	rode,	ridden.	Swell,	ſwell'd,	ſwoln.
Dare,	durſt,	dared.	Ring,	rang,	rung.	Take,	took,	taken.
Do,	did,	done.	Riſe,	roſe,	riſen.	Tear,	tore,	torn.
Draw,	drew,	drawn.	Run,	ran,	run.	Thrive,	throve,	thriven.
Drive,	drove,	driven.	See,	ſaw,	ſeen.	Throw,	threw,	thrown.
Eat,	ate,	eaten.	Seeth,	ſod,	ſodden.	Tread,	trode,	trodden.
Fall,	fell,	fallen.	Shake,	ſhook,	ſhaken.	Wear,	wore,	worn.
Fly,	flew,	flown.	Shear,	ſhore,	ſhorn.	Weave,	wove,	woven.
Forſake	forſook	forſaken.	Shoot,	ſhot,	ſhotten.	Write,	wrote,	written.

Theſe Preterites, *Bare, Share, Sware, Tare, Ware, Clave, Gat, Begat, Forgat, Brake, Spake, Slang, Sprang, Swang, Wan, Stank, Sank,* are ſeldom uſed: But *Beſeech'd, Catch'd, Work'd, Digged, Gilded, Girded, Hang'd, Swam, Writ,* for *Beſought, Caught,* &c. are frequently to be met with.

NOTE, 1. That when the Verb ends in one *Conſonant*, that *Conſonant* is for the moſt part doubled before *ing, ed, eſt, edſt,* and *eth*; as, *Worſhip, worſhipping, worſhipped, worſhippeſt, worſhippedſt, worſhippeth*: As alſo before *en*; as, *Bid, bidden.*

NOTE, 2. That the APOSTROPHUS (which was become too common in Engliſh Verbs, as, *Lov'd, lov'ſt,* for *Loved, loveſt,*) begins now to be diſuſed by the moſt polite Writers in Proſe; but Poets ſtill uſe it, though not ſo much as formerly.

NOTE, 3. That the *Preterite Active*, and the *Participle Paſſive* (when the Word ſerves for both) are thus diſtinguiſhed: When it hath nothing before it but the Nominative alone, or *have* or *had* with it, it is the *Preterite Active*; but when it hath any Part of the helping Verb AM, it is the *Participle Paſſive.*

EXCEPT *Come, Gone, Run, Set, Riſen, Fallen, Grown, Withered,* and ſuch like intranſitive Verbs, which have frequently the *Paſſive Signs* AM, ART, &c. inſtead of HAVE in the *Perfect* Tenſe, and WAS, WAST, &c inſtead of HAD in the *Pluperfect*; as, *Veni*, I am come; *Veneram*, I was come.

NOTE, 4. That though the Latin *Perfect* frequently anſwers both to HAVE and DID, (or the Preterite Termination ED, &c.) yet they ſeem to be thus diſtinguiſhed: DID or ED, &c. reſpects a certain paſt Time, in which the Thing was finiſhed or a-finiſhing; as, *I wrote*, or *did write Yeſterday*: HAVE either ſpeaks of a Thing as but juſt now paſt, or elſe it does not refer to any particular Time that it happened at; as, *I have written my letter*, i. e. juſt now; *I have read of* Julius Cæſar, *i. e.* ſome time or other. The firſt of theſe is called the *Preter-perfect Definite*, and the other the *Preter-perfect Indefinite.*

NOTE, 5. That SHALL and WILL, by Mr *Brightland*, are thus diſtinguiſhed:

In the First Perſon ſimply SHALL foretels:
In WILL a Threat, or elſe a Promiſe, dwells.
SHALL in the Second and the Third does threat;
WILL ſimply then foretels the Future Feat.

By Mr *Turner* thus:

WILL imports the *Will* or *Purpoſe* of the Perſon it is joined with; SHALL implies the *Will* of another, who *promiſes* or *threatens* to do the Thing, or cauſe it to be done, *permits* it, *commands* it, or the like.

De Formatione Verborum.

QUatuor ſunt Terminationes Verbi, à quibus reliquæ omnes formantur; *ſcil.* *o* Præſentis, *i* Præteriti, *um* Supini, et *re* Infinitivi, hoc modo:

1. Ab *o* formantur *am* et *em*.
2. Ab *i* formantur *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, *ſſem*, et *ſſe*.
3. Ab *um* formantur *u*, *us*, et *rus*.
4. A *re* formantur reliquæ omnes; nempe, *bam*, *bo*, *rem*, *a*, *e*, *i*, *ns*, *dus*, *dum*, *di*, *do*.

Of the Formation of Verbs.

THere *are four Terminations of a Verb, from which all the reſt are formed*; namely, o *of the Preſent*, i *of the Preterite*, um *of the Supine*, *and* re *of the Infinitive*, *after this manner*:

1. *From* o *are formed* am *and* em.
2. *From* i, ram, rim, ro, ſſem *and* ſſe.
3. U, us, *and* rus, *are formed from* um.
4. *All other Parts from* re *do come*, as, bam, bo, rem, a, e, *and* i, ns, *and* dus, dum, do, *and* di.

In every complete *Verb* there are commonly four PRINCIPAL PARTS, *viz.* the *Preſent* of the *Indicative* in O, the *Preterite* or *Perfect* in I, the firſt *Supine* in UM, and the *Preſent* of the *Infinitive* in RE. The firſt (which is therefore called the THEME or Root of the *Verb*) gives Origin to the whole Verb, either *mediately* or *immediately*. The *Preterite*, the *firſt Supine*, and the *Preſent* of the *Infinitive*, come from it *immediately*, and all the reſt from them; except the *Future* of the *Indicative* in *am* and the *Preſent* of the *Subjunctive* in *em* or *am*, which, by this Scheme, are alſo formed *immediately* from the *Preſent* in O.

It is to be noted, that the *Preterites* and *Supines* of the *Firſt Conjugation* end commonly in *avi* and *atum*; of the *Second* in *ui* and *itum*; and of the *Fourth* in *ivi* and *itum*. But the *Third Conjugation* cannot be reduced to any General Ruſe, and there are a great many Exceptions in the other three, which are therefore to be learned by daily Practice, till the Scholar is advanced to that Part of *Grammar* that treats particularly of them.

But the *Preſent* of the *Infinitive*, and all the other Parts of the Verb are regularly formed after one fixed and uniform Manner.

In the foregoing Rules of *Formation*, I have, for the Eaſe of the Memory, put the *Terminations* inſtead of the *Moods* and *Tenſes*; but for the greater Plainneſs, they may be thus expreſſed:

I. From the *Preſent* of the *Indicative* are formed the *Future* of the *Indicative* of the *Third* and *Fourth Conjugations* in *am*; and the *Preſent* of the *Subjunctive* of the *Firſt* in *em*; and of the other three in *am*.

II. From the *Perfect* of the *Indicative* are formed the *Pluperfect* of it; the *Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, and *Future* of the *Subjunctive*; and the *Perfect* of the *Infinitive*.

III. From the *Firſt Supine* is formed the *Laſt Supine*, the *Participle Perfect*, and the *Future Active*.

IV. From the *Preſent* of the *Infinitive* are formed the *Imperfect* of the *Indicative*, the *Future* of the ſame when it ends in BO, (*viz.* in the firſt and ſecond *Conjugations*,) the *Imperfect* of the *Subjunctive*, the *Imperative*, the *Participles Preſent* and *Future Paſſive*, and the *Gerunds*.

NOTE 1. That Verbs in IO of the *Third Conjugation* retain *i* before *unt*, *unto*, *ebam*, *am*, *ens*, *endus*, *endum*; but loſe it in the *Preſent* of the *Infinitive*, and *Imperfect* of the *Subjunctive*.

NOTE, 2. That the laſt *Perſon Plural* of the *Imperative* may be formed by adding *o* to the ſame *Perſon* of the *Preſent* of the *Indicative*; as, *Amate*, *amanto*; *docent*, *docento*.

NOTE, 3. That the *Paſſive Voice* is formed from the ſame *Tenſes* of the *Active*, (except where *Sum* is uſed) by adding *r* to *o*, or changing *m* into *r*.

NOTE, 4. That the *Preſent* of the *Infinitive Paſſive* of the *Third Conjugation* may be formed by taking *s* from the *Second Perſon* of the *Preſent* of the *Indicative Active*; as, *legis*, *legi*: Or when the Verb is *Deponent*, by changing *or*, or *ior*, into *i*; as, *Proficiſcor*, *proficiſci*; *morior*, *mori*.

NOTE, 5. That the *Preſent* of the *Infinitive Active*, and the *Second Perſon* of the *Indicative* and *Imperative Paſſive* in *re*, are always the ſame.

NOTE, 6. That the *Second Perſon Plural* of the *Preſent* of the *Indicative*, and of the *Imperative*, are the ſame in the *Paſſive Voice*.

NOTE, 7. That where any of the *Principal Parts* are wanting, thoſe Parts are commonly wanting that come from them. For which Reaſon, Grammarians give *Supines* to a great many Verbs, which yet are not to be found in any Author, becauſe the Participles formed from them are found; and they ſuppoſe likewiſe all *Deponent* Verbs of old to have had the *Active* Voice, and conſequently *Supines*, though now loſt.

NOTE, 8. That all Verbs of the *Second Conjugation* end in *eo*, and all Verbs of the *Fourth* in *io*, except *eo* and *queo*. There are eight Verbs in *o* of the *Firſt Conjugation*, viz. *beo*, *creo*, *ſcreo*, *meo*, *calceo*, *laqueo*, *nauſeo*, *uſleo*. There are twenty-four in *io* of the *Firſt*, viz. *amplio*, *baſio*, *brevio*, *onſilio*, *crucio*, *furio*, *glacio*, *hio*, *lanio*, *luxurio*, *macio*, *nuncio*, *pio*, *protio*, *radio*, *repudio*, *ſatio*, *ſaucio*, *ſocio*, *ſomnio*, *ſpolio*, *ſuavio*, or rather *uavior*, *vario*, *vitio*; with ſome others leſs common, as, *decurio*, *ſuccentuio*, *faſcio*, *retalio*, *ſtrio*, *tertio*, &c.: And twelve of the *Third*, viz. *capio*, *acio*, *jacio*, *lacio*, *ſpecio*, *fodio*, *fugio*, *cupio*, *rapio*, *ſapio*, *pario*, *quatio*, with their Compounds.

It is not, in my Opinion, neceſſary to trouble the Learner with a particular Account how the reſpective Changes in the Moods, Tenſes, Numbers, and Perſons, are made; they being obvious from the Examples above, in which I have diſtinguiſhed them from the *Body* or *Eſſential Part* of the Verb by a *Diviſion* or *Hyphen*. And perhaps this alone, without any other particular Rule, might be a ſufficient Direction. For to conjugate the Verb by the Example of another, we have no more to do, but inſtead of the *Eſſential Part* of the one, (which is all that ſtands before *o*, *or*, or *io*, of the *Preſent* of the *Indicative*) to ſubſtitute the *Eſſential Part*

of the other, and then to add to it the additional Syllables it receives in Conjugation, as before. Only we are to advert, 1. That in the *Preterites* and *Supines*, and the *Parts* that come from them, we are to reckon all before *i* and *um*, for the body of the Verb, adding the usual Syllables to it, as in the *Active Voice* of *Lego*. 2. In Verbs in *io*, we are to retain or omit the *i*, as in *Note* 1.

There is yet another Way of the Formation of Verbs, differing only from the First Method in this, that what Parts according to it are formed from the Infinitive, are by this formed from the First or Second Person of the Present of the Indicative. But though this may be the more natural Way, yet the other is more easy and uniform.

De Verbis Irregularibus.

IRREGULARIA Verba vulgò recenſentur octo, viz. *Sum*, *Eo*, *Queo*, *Volo*, *Nolo*, *Malo*, *Fero*, et *Fio*, cum Compoſitis.

Of Irregular Verbs.

THE *IRREGULAR Verbs* are *commonly reckoned Eight*, viz. Sum, Eo, Queo, Volo, Nolo, Malo, Fero, *and* Fio, *with their Compounds.*

SUM.

Sum, fui, eſſe, *To be.*

INDICATIVUS.		*SUBJUNCTIVUS.*	
		Præſens.	
Sum,	*I am,*	Sim,	*I may* or *can be,*
Es,	*Thou art,*	Sis,	*Thou mayſt* or *canſt be,*
Eſt :	*He is :*	Sit :	*He may* or *can be :*
Sumus,	*We are,*	Simus,	*We may* or *can be,*
Eſtis,	*Ye are,*	Sitis,	*Ye may* or *can be,*
Sunt.	*They are.*	Sint.	*They may* or *can be.*
		Imperfectum.	
Eram,	*I was,*	Eſſem,	*I might,* &c. *be,*
Eras,	*Thou waſt,*	Eſſes,	*Thou mighteſt be,*
Erat :	*He was :*	Eſſet :	*He might be :*
Eramus,	*We were,*	Eſſemus,	*We might be,*
Eratis,	*Ye were,*	Eſſetis,	*Ye might be,*
Erant.	*They were.*	Eſſent.	*They might be.*
		Perfectum.	
Fui,	*I have been,*	Fuerim,	*I may have been,*
Fuiſti,	*Thou haſt been.*	Fueris,	*Thou mayſt have been*
Fuit :	*He hath been :*	Fuerit :	*He may have been :*
Fuimus,	*We have been,*	Fuerimus,	*We may have been,*
Fuiſtis,	*Ye have been,*	Fueritis,	*Ye may have been,*
Fuerunt, *v.* -ere.	*They have been.*	Fuerint.	*They may have been*

Pluſquam-perfectum.

Fueram,	*I had been,*	Fuiſſem,	*I might,* &c. *have*	or *had been.*
Fueras,	*Thou hadſt been,*	Fuiſſes,	*Thou mighteſt have*	
Fuerat:	*He had been:*	Fuiſſet:	*He might have*	
Fueramus,	*We had been,*	Fuiſſemus,	*We might have*	
Fueratis,	*Ye had been,*	Fuiſſetis,	*Ye might have*	
Fuerant,	*They had been.*	Fuiſſent.	*They might have*	

Futurum.

Ero,	*I ſhall* or *will be,*	Fuero,	*I ſhall have been,*
Eris,	*Thou ſhalt* or *wilt be,*	Fueris,	*Thou ſhalt have been.*
Erit:	*He ſhall* or *will be:*	Fuerit:	*He ſhall have been:*
Erimus,	*We ſhall* or *will be,*	Fuerimus,	*We ſhall have been,*
Eritis,	*Ye ſhall* or *will be,*	Fueritis,	*Ye ſhall have been,*
Erunt.	*They ſhall* or *will be.*	Fuerint,	*They ſhall have been.*

IMPERATIVUS.

Præſens.

Es *vel* Eſto,	*Be thou.*
Eſto:	*Let him be:*
Eſte *vel* Eſtote,	*Be ye,*
Sunto,	*Let them be.*

INFINITIVUS.

Præſ. Eſſe, *To be.*
Perf. Fuiſſe, *To have been.*
Fut. Futurum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe, *To be about to be.*

PARTICIPIUM.

Fut. Futurus, *About to be.*

The Compounds of SUM are, *Adſum, abſum, deſum, interſum, præſum, obſum, ſubſum, ſuperſum, inſum, proſum,* and *poſſum.* The firſt eight are conjugated as the ſimple SUM: *Inſum* wants the Preterite and its Deſcendants; for we do not uſe *Infui, infuiſti, infueram,* &c.

¶ PROSUM, *To do good,* has a *d* where SUM begins with *e;* as,

IND. *Pr.* Pro-ſum, prod-es, prod-eſt: pro-ſumus, prod-eſtis, pro-ſunt.
Im. Prod-eram, prod-eras, prod-erat: prod-eramus, *&c.*
SUB. *Im.* Prod-eſſem, prod-eſſes, prod-eſſet: prod-eſſemus, *&c.*
IMPERAT. Prod-eſto, Prod-eſte. INFINIT. *Præſ.* Prod-eſſe.

POSSUM ſhould be *pot-ſum,* (as being compounded of *potis,* able, and *Sum*); but for the better Sound, *t* is changed into *ſ* before another *ſ,* and retained before any other Letter: And for the ſame reaſon, *ſ* is always taken away. *Poſſem* and *Poſſe* are contracted for *Poteſſem, Poteſſe,* which are yet to be found in ſome old Authors: thus,

¶ Poſſum, potui, poſſe, *To be able.*

INDICATIVUS.

Præſ. Poſſum,	potes,	poteſt:	poſſumus,	poteſtis,	poſſunt.
Imp. Poteram,	poteras,	poterat:	poteramus,	poteratis,	poterant.
Perf. Potui,	potuiſti,	potuit:	potuimus,	potuiſtis,	potuerunt, *v.* potuere.
Pluſ. Potueram,	potueras,	potuerat:	potueramus,	potueratis,	potuerant.
Fut. Potero,	poteris,	poterit:	poterimus,	poteritis,	poterunt.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præſ.	Poſſim,	poſſis,	poſſit :	poſſimus,	poſſitis,	poſſint.
Imp.	Poſſem,	poſſes,	poſſet :	poſſemus,	poſſetis,	poſſent.
Perf.	Potuerim,	potueris,	potuerit :	potuerimus,	potueritis,	potuerint.
Pluſ.	Potuiſſem,	potuiſſes,	potuiſſet :	potuiſſemus,	potuiſſetis,	potuiſſent.
Fut.	Potuero,	potueris,	potuerit :	potuerimus,	potueritis,	potuerint.

INFINITIVUS.

Præſ. Poſſe. *Perf.* Potuiſſe. *The reſt wanting.*

E O.

Eo, ivi, itum, ire, *To go.*

INDICATIVUS.

Præſ.	Eo,	is,	it :	imus,	itis,	eunt.
Imp.	Ibam,	ibas,	ibat :	ibamus,	ibatis,	ibant.
Perf.	Ivi,	iviſti,	ivit :	ivimus,	iviſtis,	iverunt, *vel* ivere.
Pluſ.	Iveram,	iveras,	iverat :	iveramus,	iveratis,	iverant.
Fut.	Ibo,	ibis,	ibit :	ibimus,	ibitis,	ibunt.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præſ.	Eam,	eas,	eat :	eamus,	eatis,	eant.
Imp.	Irem,	ires,	iret :	iremus,	iretis,	irent.
Perf.	Iverim,	iveris,	iverit :	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.
Pluſ.	Iviſſem,	iviſſes,	iviſſet :	iviſſemus,	iviſſetis,	iviſſent.
Fut.	Ivero,	iveris,	iverit :	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præſ. I, ito : ite, itote, eunto.

INFINITIVUS.

Præſ. Ire.
Perf. Iviſſe.
Fut. Iturum eſſe *v.* fuiſſe.

PARTICIPIA.	*SUPINA.*	*GERUNDIA.*
Præſ. Iens, *Gen.* euntis.	1. Itum.	Eundum,
Fut. Iturus, -a, -um.	2. Itu.	Eundi,
		Eundo.

NOTE, 1. That in general EO is a Verb of the Fourth Conjugation.

NOTE, 2. That, of old, Verbs of the Fourth had their Imperfect in *ibam*, and Future in *ibo*; of which there are many Examples in *Plautus* and *Terence*, and ſome in *Virgil* and *Horace*.

After the ſame Manner, the Compounds of Eo are conjugated *viz. Adeo, abeo, exeo, obeo, redeo, ſubeo, pereo, coëo, ineo, præeo, anteëo, prodeo, prætereo, tranſeo; Adibam, adibò, adiens, adeuntis, adeundum*, &c. But *ambio* is a regular Verb of the Fourth Conjugation.

Sum

NOTE, That in the Compounds, *ivi*, *iviſti*, &c. are ſeldom uſed, but they are contracted into *ii*, *iiſti*; as, *adii*, *adiiſti*, and ſometimes *adiſti*: So *adieram*, *adierim*, &c.

QUEO, *I can*, and NEQUEO, *I cannot*, are conjugated the ſame Way as EO; they only want the *Imperative* and the *Gerunds*: And the *Participles* are ſcarcely in uſe.

VOLO.

Volo, volui, velle, *To will* or *be willing*.

INDICATIVUS.

Præſ.	Volo,	vis,	vult:	volumus,	vultis,	volunt.
Imp.	Vol-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Perf.	Vol-ui,	-uiſti,	-uit:	-uimus,	-uiſtis,	-uerunt, *v.* -uere.
Pluſ.	Vol-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat:	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
Fut.	Volam,	voles,	volet:	volemus,	voletis,	volent.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præſ.	Velim,	velis,	velit:	velimus,	velitis,	velint.
Imp.	Vellem,	velles,	vellet:	vellemus,	velletis,	vellent.
Perf.	Voluerim,	-ueris,	-uerit:	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
Pluſ.	Voluiſſem,	-uiſſes,	-uiſſet:	-uiſſemus,	-uiſſetis,	-uiſſent.
Fut.	Vol-uero,	-ueris,	-uerit:	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

INFINITIVUS. *PARTICIPIUM.*

Præſ. Velle. *Perf.* Voluiſſe. *Præſ.* Volens.

The reſt are wanting.

NOLO.

Nolo, nolui, nolle, *To be unwilling*.

INDICATIVUS.

Præſ.	Nolo,	non-vis,	non-vult:	nolumus,	non-vultis,	nolunt.
Imp.	Nol-ebam,	-ebas,	ebat:	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Perf.	Nolui,	-uiſti,	-uit:	-uimus,	-uiſtis,	-uerunt. *v.* -uere.
Pluſ.	Nolueram,	-ueras,	-uerat:	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
Fut.	Nolam,	noles,	nolet:	nolemus,	noletis,	nolent.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præſ.	Nolim,	nolis,	nolit:	nolimus,	nolitis,	nolint.
Imp.	Nollem,	nolles,	nollet:	nollemus,	nolletis,	nollent.

Perf. Nol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit : -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.
Pluſ. Nol uiſſem, -uiſſes, uiſſet : -uiſſemus, -uiſſetis, -uiſſent.
Fut. Nol-uero, -ueris, -uerit : -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

IMPERATIVUS. *INFINITIVUS.* *PARTICIPIUM.*

Pr. Noli, nolite, | *Pr.* Nole. | *Præſ.* Nolens.
Nolito : nolitote. | *Per.* Noluiſſe. | *The reſt wanting.*

M A L O.

Malo, malui, malle, *To be more willing.*

INDICATIVUS.

Præſ. Malo, mavis, mavult : malumus, mavultis, malunt.
Imp. Mal-ebam, -ebas, -ebat : -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
Perf. Malùi, -uiſti, -uit : -uimus, -uiſtis, -uerunt, *v.* -uere.
Pluſ. Mal-ueram, -ueras, -uerat : -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.
Fut. Malam, males, malet, *&c. This is ſcarcely in uſe.*

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præſ. Malim, malis, malit : malimus, malitis, malint.
Imp. Mallem, malles, mallet : mallemus, malletis, mallent.
Perf. Mal-uerim, -ueris, -uerit : -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.
Pluſ. Mal-uiſſem, -uiſſes, -uiſſet : -uiſſemus, -uiſſetis, -uiſſent.
Fut. Mal-uero, -ueris, -uerit : -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

INFINITIVUS.

Præſ. Malle. *Perf.* Maluiſſe.

NOTE, That *Volo*, *Nolo*, and *Malo*, retain ſomething of the Third Conjugation : for *Vis*, *vult*, *vultis*, are contracted of *Volis*, *volit*, *volitis*; and *o* is changed into *u* ; for of old they ſaid *Volt*, *voltis*.

Nolo is compounded of *Non volo*, and *Malo* of *Magis volo*.

F E R O.

V O X A C T I V A.

Fero, tuli, latum, ferre, *To bring* or *ſuffer.*

INDICATIVUS.

Præſ. Fero, fers, fert : ferimus, fertis, ferunt.
Imp. Ferebam, ferebas, ferebat : ferebamus, ferebatis, ferebant.
Perf. Tuli, tuliſti, tulit : tulimus, tuliſtis, tulerunt, *v.* tulere.
Pluſ. Tuleram, tuleras, tulerat : tuleramus, tuleratis, tulerant.
Fut. Feram, feres, feret : feremus, feretis, ferent.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præſ.	Feram,	feras,	ferat:	feramus,	feratis, ferant.
Imp.	Ferrem,	ferres,	ferret:	ferremus,	ferretis, ferrent.
Perf.	Tulerim,	tuleris,	tulerit:	tulerimus,	tuleritis, tulerint.
Pluſ.	Tuliſſem,	tuliſſes,	tuliſſet:	tuliſſemus,	tuliſſetis, tuliſſent.
Fut.	Tulero,	tuleris,	tulerit:	tulerimus,	tuleritis, tulerint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præſ. Fer, / Ferto, ferto: ferte, / fertote, ferunto.

INFINITIVUS.

Pr. Ferre.
Perf. Tuliſſe.
Fut. Laturum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.

PARTICIPIA.

Præſ. Ferens.
Fut. Laturus, -a, -um.

SUPINA.

1. Latum.
2. Latu.

GERUNDIA.

Ferendum,
Ferendi,
Ferendo.

VOX PASSIVA.

Feror, latus, ferri.

INDICATIVUS.

Præſ.	Feror,	ferris, / ferre,	fertur:	ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.
Imp.	Fer-ebar,	-ebaris, / -ebare,	-ebatur:	-ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.
Perf.	Latus ſum *vel* fui,			latus es *vel* fuiſti, &c.
Pluſ.	Latus eram *vel* fueram,			latus eras *vel* fueras, &c.
Fut.	Ferar,	fereris, / ferere,	feretur:	feremur, feremini, ferentur.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præſ.	Ferar,	feraris, / ferare,	feratur:	feramur, feramini, ferantur.
Imp.	Ferrer,	ferreris, / ferrere,	ferretur:	ferremur, ferremini, ferrentur.
Perf.	Latus ſim *vel* fuerim,			latus ſis *vel* fueris, &c.
Pluſ.	Latus eſſem *vel* fuiſſem,			latus eſſes *vel* fuiſſes, &c.
Fut.	Latus fuero,			latus fueris, &c.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præſ. Ferre, / Fertor, fertor: ferimini, feruntor.

INFINITIVUS.

Præſ. Ferri.
Perf. Latum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.
Fut. Latum iri.

PARTICIPIA.

Perf. Latus, -a, -um,
Fut. Ferendus, -a, -um,

NOTE, That *Fero* is a Verb of the Third Conjugation; *Fers, fert, ferimus, fertis, ferunt, ferebam, ferebas, ferebat, ferebamus, ferebatis, ferebant, feram, feres, feret, feremus, feretis, ferent, ferrem, ferres, ferret, ferremus, ferretis, ferrent, fer, ferto, ferte, ferrem, ferre, ferris, fertur, fertor*, being contracted of *Feris, ferit, feritis, ferito, ferite, fererem, ferere, fereris, feritur* and *feritor*.

Alſo, *Fer* is contracted of *fere*; which, in like manner, has happened to the Imperatives of *Dico, duco, facio*, they having *dic, duc, fac*, inſtead of *dice, duce, face*.

The Compounds of *Fero* are conjugated the ſame Way as the Simple; as, *Affero, attuli, allatum; Aufero, abſtuli, ablatum; Differo, diſtuli, dilatum; Confero, contuli, collatum; Infero, intuli, illatum; Offero, obtuli, oblatum; Effero, extuli, elatum*: So, *Circumfero, perfero, tranſfero, defero, profero, antefero, præfero*.

F I O.

Fio, factus, fieri, *To be made*, or *to become*.

INDICATIVUS.

Præſ.	Fio,	fis,	fit:	fimus,	fitis, fiunt.
Imp.	Fiebam,	fiebas,	fiebat:	fiebamus,	fiebatis, fiebant.
Perf.	Factus ſum *vel* fui,		factus es *vel* fuiſti, *&c.*		
Pluſ.	Factus eram *vel* fueram,		factus eras *vel* fueras, *&c.*		
Fut.	Fiam,	fies,	fiet:	fiemus,	fietis, fient.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præſ.	Fiam,	fias,	fiat:	fiamus,	fiatis, fiant.
Imp.	Fierem,	fieres,	fieret:	fieremus,	fieretis, fierent.
Perf.	Factus ſim *vel* fuerim,		factus ſis *vel* fueris, *&c.*		
Pluſ.	Factus eſſem *vel* fuiſſem,		factus eſſes *vel* fuiſſes, *&c.*		
Fut.	Factus fuero,		factus fueris, *&c.*		

IMPERATIVUS.

Pr. Fi*, Fito: fite, fitote, fiunto.

INFINITIVUS.

Præſ. Fieri.
Perf. Factum eſſe *v.* fuiſſe.
Fut. Factum iri.

PARTICIPIA.

Perf. Factus, -a, -um,
Fut. Faciendus, -a, -um,

SUPINUM.

Factu.

---

* Tho' *Fi* is rejected by ſome Grammarians of great Note, yet we have given it Place here, not only becauſe it is to be found in *Plautus*, but alſo in *Horace, Lib* 2. *Sat.* v. *ver.* 38. *Fi cognitor ipſe*, according to the beſt MSS. and Editions.

NOTE, 1. That *Fio* is the Paſſive of *Facio*, To make, (which is regular,) inſtead of *Facior*; which is not in Uſe: Yet the Compounds of *Facio*, which change *a* into *i*, are regular; as, *afficior, affectus, affici; perficior, perfectus, perfici.*

NOTE, 2. That the Compounds of *Facio*, with Verbs, Nouns, or Adverbs, retain the *a*, and have their Imperat. Act. *fac*, and their Paſſive Form (when uſed) *fio*; as, *Calefacio, lucrifacio, benefacio; calefac, calefio*, &c. But thoſe compounded with a Prepoſition change the *a* into *i*, and have *ice* and *ficior*. There are ſome compounded of *Facio* and a Noun, where *facio* is changed into *fico* of the Firſt Conjugation; as, *magnifico, ſignifico.*

To the *Irregular* Verbs may be reduced EDO, *To eat*, which in ſome of its parts falls in with the Verb *Sum*: thus,

IND. *Præſ.* Edo, es, eſt: . . . eſtis . . .
SUB. *Imp.* Eſſem, eſſes, eſſet: eſſemus, eſſetis, eſſent.
IMP. *Præſ.* Es *vel* eſto. . . eſte *vel* eſtote. INFIN. Eſſe.

Likewiſe its Compounds, *Comedo, comes, comeſt*, &c. and *Exedo, exes, exeſt*, &c. But all theſe may likewiſe be regularly conjugated, *Edo, edis, edit*, &c. *Ederem, ederes, ederet*, &c.

Of Defective Verbs.

THOUGH ſome of the *Irregular* Verbs already mentioned want ſome of their parts, and upon that Account may be called alſo *Defective* Verbs, yet by DEFECTIVE *Verbs* here we chiefly underſtand ſuch as want conſiderable Branches, or are uſed only in few *Tenſes* and *Perſons*.—We ſhall ſet down thoſe that moſt frequently occur.

I. AIO, *I ſay*; INQUAM, *I ſay*; FOREM, *I ſhould be*; AUSIM, *I dare*; FAXIM, *I'll ſee to it*, or *I will do it*; AVE and SALVE, *God ſave you, Hail, Good-morrow*; CEDO, *Tell*, or *give me*; QUÆSO, *I pray.*

IND. *Præſ.* Aio, ais, ait: . . . . . aiunt.
Imp. Aiebam, -ebas, -ebat, -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
Perf. . . . . aiſti, ...
SUB. *Præſ.* . . . . aias, aiat: . . . . aiatis, aiant.
IMPERAT. ai. [PARTICIP. *Præſ.* aiens.]

INDIC. *Præſ.* Inquam, inquis, inquit: inquimus, inquitis, inquiunt.
Imp. . . . . . inquiebat: . . . . . inquiebant.
Perf. . . . . inquiſti, ...
Fut. . . . . inquies, inquiet: . . . . . .
IMPERAT. inque, -ito. PARTICIP. *Præſ.* inquiens.

SUB. *Imp.* / *Pluſ.* Forem, fores, foret: foremus, foretis, forent.

INF. Fore, *to be*, or *to be about to be*; the ſame with *futurum eſſe.*

SUB. *Præſ.* Auſim, auſis, auſit: . . . . . .
Perf. Faxim, faxis, faxit: . . . . . faxint.
Fut. Faxo, faxis, faxit: . . . . . faxitis, faxint.

Note, That *Faxim* and *Faxo* are uſed inſtead of *Fecerim* and *Fecero.*

IMPERAT. Ave, avete, INF. avere.
Aveto, avetote.
Salve, ſalvete. INF. ſalvere.
Salveto, ſalvetote.

D. Cedo, cedite.
Præſ. Quæſo quæſumus.

II. Theſe three Verbs, ODI, MEMINI, COEPI, have only the *Preterite* Tenſe, and what is formed from it; and therefore are by ſome called PRETERITIVE Verbs; thus:

Odi, oderam, oderim, odiſſem, odero, odiſſe.
Memini, memineram, meminerim, meminiſſem, meminero, meminiſſe.
Cœpi, cœperam, cœperim, cœpiſſem, cœpero, cœpiſſe.

But under theſe they comprehend alſo the Signification of the other Tenſes; as, *Memini*, I remember, *or* I have remembered; *Memineram*, I remembered, *or* I had remembered, *&c.* So *Odi*, I hate, *or* I have hated; *Cœpi*, I begin, *or* I have begun: Though I am not fully ſatisfied as to this laſt; for I do not know any example where *Cœpi* doth clearly ſignify the preſent Tenſe.

Memini hath alſo the Imperative, *Memento*, Remember thou; *Mementote*, Remember ye. Some add *Meminens*, Remembering, which is ſcarcely to be imitated.

To theſe ſome add *Novi*, becauſe it frequently hath the Signification of the Preſent, *I know*, as well as *I have known*, though it comes from *Noſco*, which is complete.

NOTE, 1. That *Odientes* is to be found in *Petronius*; *Odiatur* in *Seneca*; *Cœpio*, in *Plautus* and *Terence*. See *Voſſ. Analog. lib.* iii. *cap.* 39.

NOTE, 2. That the Participles *Cœptus* and *Oſus*, with its Compounds *Peroſus*, *Exoſus*, are in uſe among the beſt Authors; but *Perodi* and *Exodi* are not.

III. *Faris*, To ſpeak, wants the firſt *Perſon* of the *Preſ. Indic.* and perhaps the whole *Preſent* of the *Subjunctive*; for we do not ſay *For* or *Fer*, and rarely *Feris*, *fetur*, &c. So likewiſe *Daris* and *Deris*, but not *Dor* or *Der*, To be given. The Compounds of the firſt; as, *Effor*, *affor*, are rare; but the Compounds of the other, as *Addor*, *Reddor*, are common.

IV. Moſt of the other defective Verbs are but ſingle Words, and rarely to be found but among Poets; as, *Infit*, He begins; *Defit*, It is wanting. Some are compounded of a Verb with the Conjunction *Si*; as, *Sis* for *Si vis*, If thou wilt; *Sultis* for *Si vultis*, If ye will; *Sodes* for *Si audes*, If thou dareſt.

Of Impersonal Verbs.

THESE are alſo a kind of *Defective* Verbs, which for the moſt part are uſed only in the *Third Perſon Singular*. They have the Sign IT before them in Engliſh; as, *Pœnitet*, It repents; *Placet*, It pleaſes: And are thus conjugated:

	Præſ.	*Imperf.*	*Perfect.*	*Pluſquam.*	*Fut.*
IND.	Pœnitet,	pœnitebat,	pœnituit,	pœnituerat,	pœnitebit.
SUB.	Pœniteat,	pœniteret,	pœnituerit,	pœnituiſſet,	pœnituerit.
INF.	Pœnitere,	. . .	pœnituiſſe.		

Moſt Verbs may be uſed impersonally in the Paſſive Voice, eſpecially ſuch as otherwiſe have no Paſſive; as,

	Præſ.	*Imperf.*	*Perfect.*	*Pluſquam.*	*Fut.*
Ind.	Pugnatur,	pugnabatur,	pugnatum { eſt, fuit,	-atum { erat, fuerat,	pugnabitur.
Sub.	Pugnetur,	pugnaretur,	pugnatum { ſit, fuerit,	-atum { eſſet, fuiſſet,	-atum fuerit.
Inf.	Pugnari,	. .	pugnatum { eſſe, fuiſſe,		pugnatum iri.

NOTE, 1. That IMPERSONALS are applied to any *Perſon* or *Number*, y putting that which ſtands before other Verbs, after the Impersonals, n the Caſes which they govern; as, *Pœnitet me, te, illum*, I repent, thou epenteſt, he repenteth; inſtead of *Ego Pœnitео*, &c. which is ſcarcely Latin. *Placet mihi, tibi, illi*, It pleaſes me, thee, him; *or* I pleaſe, thou pleaſeſt, *&c. Pugnatur a me, a te, ab illo*, I fight, thou fighteſt, he fighteth, *&c.*

NOTE, 2. That *Impersonals* are not uſed in the *Imperative*, but inſtead f it we take the *Subjunctive*.

NOTE, 3. That *Impersonal* Verbs are very often uſed *Perſonally*, eſpeci-lly in the *Plural* Number; as, *Accidit, Contingit, Evenit, Pertinet, Decet, olet, Licet, Nocet, Patet, Placet, Præſtat*, &c. For we ſay, *Tu mihi ſola laces; Nulli noceo; Multa homini accidunt, contingunt, eveniunt; Par-um parva decent*, &c. But it is to be remarked that they are generally *mperſonal*, when an *Infinitive* or *Subjunctive* Mood follows: for though can ſay, *Tu places mihi*; yet I cannot ſay, *Si places audire*, but *Si placet bi audire*. Again, we cannot ſay, *Ego contigi eſſe domi*: But *Me con-igit eſſe domi*, or *Mihi contigit eſſe domi*. Likewiſe *Evenit illum mori*, *Ut ille moreretur*; but not *Ille evenit mori*.

[*I ſhall not here enquire what is the* Word *underſtood to* Impersonal *Verbs, whether it is a* Noun *of the like* Signification, *as*, Pugna pugnatur, *or the Word* Res *or* Negotium, *or the* Infinitive Mood: *Tho' I incline to think, that any one of theſe will not anſwer to them all, but that there are ſome which the firſt, to others the ſecond, and to others the third, may be moſt ly underſtood, as the Nature of the Verb and good Senſe ſhall direct us. his we are ſure of, that the Word underſtood can never be a* Perſon *pro-rly ſo called, but a* Thing; *for which Reaſon, and the Want of the two rimary* Perſons, viz. *the* firſt *and* ſecond, *they are called* Impersonal; *tho' me are much offended with the* Name.]

CAP. IV.

De Participio.

TRia ſunt præcipuè conſideranda in Participio, iz. *Tempus, Significatio*, et *eclinatio*.

I. Tempora Participiorum nt tria: *Præſens, Præteri-m*, et *Futurum*.

Temp.	Præſ.	dè in	*ns.*
	Præt.		*tus, ſus, xus.*
	Fut.		*rus, dus.*

II. Significatio Participi-um eſt vel *Activa* vel *Paſ-a*, vel *Neutra*, ad modum rborum à quibus deſcen-nt.

CHAP. IV.

Of Participle.

THere are three things eſpecially to be conſidered in a Participle, viz. Time, Signification, and Declenſion.

I. *The Tenſes of Participles are three; the* Preſent, Preterite, *and* Future.

Partic. of the	*Pref.*	*Tenſe end in*	ns.
	Pret.		tus, ſus, xus.
	Fut.		rus, dus.

II. *The Signification of Participles is either* Active *or* Paſſive, *or* Neuter, *after the Manner of the Verbs from which they come.*

Participia
- in *ns* et *rus* plerumque ſunt *Activa*.
- in *dus*, ſemper *Paſſiva*.
- in *tus*, *ſus*, *xus*, plerumque ſunt *Paſſiva*, interdum verò *Activa*, vel etiam *Communia*.

III. Omnia Participia ſunt Adjectiva: quæ deſinunt in *ns* ſunt *Tertiæ Declinationis*; reliqua autem omnia *Primæ et Secundæ*.

Participles
- *in* ns *and* rus *are generall* Active.
- *in* dus, *always* Paſſive.
- *in* tus, ſus, xus, *are gene rally* Paſſive, *ſometime* Active, *or alſo* Com mon.

III. *All Participles are A jectives: Thoſe which end in n are of the* Third Declenſion *but all the reſt are of the* Fir *and* Second.

A PARTICIPLE is a kind of Adjective formed from a Verb, whi in its Signification always imports ſome Time.

It is ſo called, becauſe it *partakes* of a Noun and a Verb, having Ge ders and Caſes from the one, Time and Signification from the other, a Number from both.

1. ACTIVE Verbs [See Chap. IX.] have two *Participles*; one of t *Preſent* Time, ending in *ns*; as, *Amans*, Loving: And another of t *Future*, ending in *rus*; as, *Amaturus*, About to love.

2. PASSIVE Verbs have likewiſe two *Participles*: One of the *Preteri* ending in *tus*, *ſus*, or *xus*; as, *Amatus*, Loved; *Viſus*, Seen; *Flex* Bowed; (to which ſome add one in *uus*, *viz.* *Mortuus*, Dead:) A another of the *Future*, ending in *dus*; as, *Amandus*, To be loved.

3. NEUTER Verbs have two *Participles*, as the Active; as, *Sede* Sitting; *Seſſurus*, About to ſit.

4. *Active* INTRANSITIVE Verbs have frequently three *Particiole* as, *Carens*, Wanting; *Cariturus*, About to want; *Carendus*, To be wa ed; *Dolens*, Grieving; *Doliturus*, About to grieve: *Dolendus*, To grieved: And ſometimes four; as, *Vigilans*, Watching; *Vigilaturus*, bout to watch; *Vigilatus*, Watched; *Vigilandus*, To be watched.

5. DEPONENT and COMMON Verbs have generally four *Particiole* as, *Loquens*, Speaking; *Locuturus*, About to ſpeak; *Locutus*, Having ſp ken; *Loquendus*, To be ſpoken; *Dignans*, Vouchſafing; *Dignaturus*, bout to vouchſafe; *Dignatus*, having vouchſafed, *or* being vouchſafe *Dignandus*, To be vouchſafed.

NOTE, 1. That in ſome *Deponent* Verbs the *Participle Perfect* h both an *Active* and *Paſſive* Signification, though that of the Verb itſel only Active; as, *Teſtatus*, Having teſtified, *or* being teſtified. So *M titus*, *Meditatus*, *Oblitus*, &c.

NOTE, 2. That it is eſſential to a Participle, I. That it come im diately from a Verb: II. That in its Signification it alſo include Ti Therefore *Tunicatus*, Coated, *Larvatus*, Maſked, and ſuch like, are Participles, becauſe they come from Nouns, and not from Verbs: A *Ignarus*, Ignorant; *Elegans*, Neat; *Circumſpectus*, Circumſpect; *Taci* Silent; *Falſus*, Falſe; *Profuſus*, Prodigal, &c. are not Participles, cauſe they do not ſignify Time.

There are a kind of Adjective Nouns ending in UNDUS, which approach very near to the Nature of *Participles*; ſuch as, *Errabundus*, *Ludibundus*, *Populabundus*. They are formed from the *Imperf.* of the *Indicative*, and their Signification is much the ſame with the *Participle* of the *Preſent* Time; only they ſignify *Abundance*, or a great deal of the action, according to *A. Gellius*, *lib.* xi. *cap.* 15. or according to others, they ſignify the ſame with the *Participles* of *Frequentative* Verbs, when theſe are not in uſe. See *Gronovius* on *Gellius*, as above cited.

APPENDIX of Gerunds and Supines.

GERUNDS and SUPINES (which, becauſe of their near Relation to Verbs, are by ſome not improperly called *Participial* Words) are a Sort of *Subſtantive* Nouns expreſſing the action of the Verb in general, or in the Abſtract. GERUNDS are *Subſtantives* of the Second Declenſion, and complete in all their Caſes, except the *Vocative*. SUPINES are *Subſtantives* of the Fourth Declenſion, having only two Caſes; the *Accuſative* in UM, which makes the *Firſt Supine*; and the *Ablative* in U, which makes the *Second*.

Voſſius, *lib.* viii. *cap.* 54. thinks, *That the* Laſt Supine *may ſometimes be* Dative, *as*, Durum tactu, *i. e.* tactui; *for the Datives of the* Fourth *Declenſion of old ended in* u. *Alſo* lib. vii. cap. 8. *he takes Notice, that though* theſe *Supines have ſometimes other Caſes*, (*as*, irriſui eſſe,) *yet they are* not *reckoned Supines by Grammarians, when the* Firſt *come after Verbs of* Motion, *and the* Second *after Adjective Nouns: Thus*, dignus irriſu, *is a* Supine (*according to them*); Non ſine irriſu audientium, *is not*.]

Indeclinabilibus Partibus Orationis.

CAP. V.

De Adverbio.

IN ADVERBIO potiſſimùm ſpectanda eſt ejus *Significatio*.

Adverbiorum Significationes plurimæ ſunt: earum verò præcipuas ad ſequentia capita revocare poſſunt.

Of the Indeclinable Parts of Speech.

CHAP. V.

Of Adverb.

IN an Adverb is chiefly to be conſidered its Signification.

The Significations of Adverbs are various: But the chief of them may be redueed to the following Heads.

ADVERB is an indeclinable Part of Speech, which being joined to a Noun, Verb, or other Adverb, expreſſes ſome Circumſtance, Quality, or Manner of their Signification.

Adverbs denoting CIRCUMSTANCE, are chiefly thoſe of *Place*, *Time*, and *Order*.

1. Adverbs of PLACE are fivefold, viz. *Adverbs ſignifying Motion,*

(1.) *in a Place.* (or Reſt)

	UBI?	*Where?*
	Hic,	*Here.*
	Illic,	*There.*
	Iſtic,	
	Ibi,	
	Intus,	*Within.*
	Foris,	*Without.*
	Ubique,	*Every where.*
	Nuſquam,	*No where.*
	Alicubi,	*Some where.*
	Alibi,	*Elſe where.*
	Ubivis,	*Any where.*
	Ibidem,	*In the ſame Place.*

(2.) *to a Place.*

	QUO?	*Whither?*
	Huc,	*Hither.*
	Illuc,	*Thither.*
	Iſtuc,	
	Intro,	*To within.*
	Foras,	*To without.*
	Eo,	*To that Place.*
	Alio,	*To another Place.*
	Aliquo,	*To ſome Place.*
	Eodem,	*To the ſame Place.*

(3.) *towards a Place.*

	QUORSUM?	*Whitherward?*
	Verſus,	*Towards.*
	Horſum,	*Hitherward.*
	Illorſum,	*Thitherward.*
	Surſum,	*Upward.*
	Deorſum,	*Downward.*
	Antrorſum,	*Forward.*
	Retrorſum,	*Backward.*
	Dextrorſum,	*To the right Hand.*
	Siniſtrorſum,	*To the left Hand.*

(4.) *from a Place.*

	UNDE?	*From whence?*
	Hinc,	*From hence.*
	Illinc,	*From thence.*
	Iſthinc,	
	Inde,	
	Aliunde,	*From elſewhere.*
	Alicunde,	*From ſome Place.*
	Sicunde,	*If from any Place.*
	Utrinque,	*On both Sides.*
	Superne,	*From above.*
	Inferne,	*From below.*
	Cœlitus,	*From Heaven.*
	Funditus,	*From the Ground.*

(5.) *through or by a Place.*

	QUA?	*Which Way?*
	Hac,	*This Way.*
	Illac,	*That Way.*
	Iſthac,	
	Alia,	*Another Way.*

2. Adverbs of TIME are threefold, *viz.* ſuch as ſignify,

(1.) *Being in Time, either,*

1. *Preſent.*

	NUNC,	*Now.*
	Hodie,	*To-day.*

2. *Paſt.*

	TUNC,	*Then.*
	Tum,	
	Heri,	*Yeſterday.*
	Dudum,	*Heretofore.*
	Pridem,	
	Pridie,	*The day before.*
	Nudius tertius	*Three days ago.*
	Nuper,	*Lately.*

3. *Future.*

very near.

	JAMJAM,	*Preſently.*
	Mox,	*Immediately.*
	Statim,	*By and by.*
	Protinus,	*Inſtantly.*
	Illico,	*Straightway.*

remote;

	CRAS,	*To-Morrow.*
	Poſtridie,	*The day after.*
	Perendie,	*Two Days hence.*
	Nondum,	*Not yet.*

4. *Indefinite.*

	QUANDO?	*When?*
	Aliquando,	*Sometimes.*
	Nonnunquam	
	Interdum,	
	Semper,	*Ever.*
	Nunquam,	*Never.*
	Interim,	*In the mean Time*
	Quotidie,	*Daily.*

(2.) *Continuance of Time.*

DIU,	*Long.*
Quamdiu,	*How long.*
Tamdiu,	*So long.*
Jamdiu,	*Long ago.*
Jamdudum,	
Jampridem,	

(3.) *Viciſſitude or Repetition of Time.*

1. *Indefinite.*

	QUOTIES?	*How often?*
	Sæpe,	*Often.*
	Raro,	*Seldom.*
	Toties,	*So often.*
	Aliquoties,	*For ſeveral Times*
	Viciſſim,	*By Turns.*
	Alternatim,	
	Ruſſus,	*Again.*
	Iterum,	
	Subinde,	*Ever and anon.*
	Identidem,	

2. *Definite, or in Number.*

	SEMEL,	*Once.*
	Bis,	*Twice.*
	Ter,	*Thrice.*
	Quater,	*Four Times,* &c.

COMPARATIVE, *denoting,* ABSOLUTE, *denoting,*

3. *Adverbs* of ORDER; as,

Inde,	*Then.*	Deinceps,	*So forth.*	Primò,	-ùm, *First.*
Deinde,	*Thereafter.*	Denuo,	*Of new.*	Secundò,	-ùm, *Secondly.*
Dehinc,	*Henceforth.*	Denique,	*Finally.*	Tertiò,	-ùm, *Thirdly.*
Porro,	*Moreover.*	Poſtremò,	*Laſtly.*	Quartò,	-ùm, *Fourthly.*

II. The other *Adverbs* expreſſing QUALITY, MANNER, &c. are either *Abſolute* or *Comparative.*

ABSOLUTE, *denoting,*

1. QUALITY ſimply: *as,* Bene, *well*; malè, *ill*; fortiter, *bravely*: And innumerable others that come from Adjective *Nouns* or *Participles.*
2. CERTAINTY: *as,* Profectò, certè, ſanè, planè, næ, utique, ita, etiam, *truly, verily, yes*; quidni? *why not?* omnino, *certainly.*
3. CONTINGENCE: *as,* Fortè, forſan, fortaſſis, fors, *happily, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.*
4. NEGATION: *as,* Non, haud, *not*; nequaquam, *not at all*; nequiquam, *by no means*; minimè, *nothing leſs.*
5. PROHIBITION: *as,* Ne, *not.*
6. SWEARING: *as,* Hercle, Pol, Edepol, Mecaſtor, *by Hercules, by Pollux,* &c.
7. EXPLAINING: *as,* Utpote, videlicet, ſcilicet, nimirum, nempe, *to wit, namely.*
8. SEPARATION: *as,* Seorſum, *apart*; ſeparatim, *ſeparately*; ſigillatim, *one by one*; viritim, *man by man*; oppidatim, *town by town,* &c.
9. JOINING TOGETHER: *as,* Simul, unà, pariter, *together*; generaliter, *generally*; univerſaliter, *univerſally*; plerumque, *for the moſt part.*
10. INDICATION or POINTING OUT: *as,* En, ecce, *lo, behold.*
11. INTERROGATION: *as,* Cur, quare, quamobrem? *why, wherefore?* num, an? *whether?* quomodo, qui? *how?* *To which add,* Ubi, quo, quorſum, unde, quà, quando, quamdiu, quoties.

COMPARATIVE, *denoting,*

1. EXCESS: *as,* Valde, maximè, magnopere, ſummopere, admodum, oppidò, perquam, longè, *very much, exceedingly*; nimis, nimiùm, *too much*; prorſus, penitus, omnino, *altogether, wholly*; magis, *more*; meliùs, *better*; pejùs, *worſe*; fortiùs, *more bravely*: And optimè, *beſt*; peſſimè, *worſt*; fortiſſimè, *moſt bravely*: And innumerable others of the *Comparative* and *Superlative* Degrees.
2. DEFECT: *as,* Ferme, ferè, prope, propemodùm, penè, *almoſt*; parum, *little*; paullo, paullulum, *very little.*
3. PREFERENCE: *as,* Potiùs, ſatiùs, *rather*; potiſſimùm, præcipuè, præſertim, *chiefly, eſpecially*; imò, *yes, nay, nay rather.*
4. LIKENESS or EQUALITY: *as,* Ita, ſic, adeò, *ſo*; ut, uti, ſicut, ſicuti, velut, veluti, ceu, tanquam, quaſi, *as, as if*; quemadmodum, *even as*; ſatis, *enough*; itidem, *in like manner.*
5. UNLIKENESS or INEQUALITY: *as,* Aliter, ſecus, *otherwiſe*; alioqui, or alioquin, *elſe*; nedum, *much more* or *much leſs.*
6. ABATEMENT: *as,* Senſim, paullatim, pedetentim, *by degrees, piece-meal*; vix, *ſcarcely*; ægrè, *hardly, with difficulty.*
7. EXCLUSION: *as,* Tantùm, ſolùm, modò, tantummodo, duntaxat, demum, *only.*

NOTE, 1. That ADVERBS ſeem originally to have been contrived to expreſs compendiouſly in one Word what muſt otherwiſe have required two or more: as, *Sapienter*, wiſely, for *cum ſapientia*; *hic*, for *in hoc loco*; *ſemper*, for *in omni tempore*; *ſemel*, for *una vice*; *bis*, for *duabus vicibus*; *Hercule*, for *Hercules me juvet*, &c. Therefore many of them are nothing elſe but *Adjective Nouns* or *Pronouns*, having the *Preposition* and *Subſtantive* underſtood: as, *quò*, *eò*, *còdem*; for *ad quæ*, *ea*, *eadem*, [*loca*], or *cui*, *ei*, *eidem*, [*loco*]; for of old theſe Datives ended in *o*. Thus, *qua*, *huc*, *illac*, &c. are plain *Adjectives* in the *Abl. ſing. femin.* the Word *viâ*, a Way, and *in*, being underſtood. Many of them are Compounds: as, *quomodo*, i. e. *quo modo*; *quemadmodum*, i. e. *ad quem modum*; *quamobrem*, i. e. *ob quam rem*; *quare*, i. e. [*pro*] *qua re*; *quorſum*, i. e. *verſus quem* [*locum*]; *ſcilicet*, i. e. *ſcire licet*; *videlicet*, i. e. *videre licet*; *illicet*, i. e. *ire licet*; *illico*, i. e. *in loco*; *magnopere*, i. e. *magno opere*; *nimirum*, i. e. *ni* [*eſt*] *mirum*.

NOTE, 2. That of *Adverbs* of *Place*, thoſe of the Firſt Kind anſwer to the Queſtion *ubi*? the Second to *quo*? the Third to *quorſum*? the Fourth to *unde*? and the Fifth to *qua*? To which might be added a Sixth, *Quouſque*, how far? anſwered by *Uſque*, until; *Hucuſque*, hitherto; *Eouſque*, ſo far; *Hactenus*, hitherto, thus far; *Eatenus*, ſo far as; *Quadantenus*, in ſome meaſure. But theſe are equally applied to *Place* and *Time*.

NOTE, 3. That *Adverbs* of *Time* of the Firſt Kind anſwer to *quando*? of the Second, to *quamdiu* and *quamdudum* or *quampridem*? of the Third to *quoties*?

NOTE, 4. That *Adverbs* of *Quality* generally anſwer to the Queſtion *quomodo*?

NOTE, 5. That ſome *Adverbs* of *Time*, *Place*, and *Order*, are frequently uſed the one for the other: as, *Ubi*, where *nunc* when? *inde*, from that Place, from that Time, thereafter, next; *hactenus*, thus far, with reſpect to Place, Time, or Order, &c. Other *Adverbs* alſo may be claſſed under different Heads.

NOTE, 6. That ſome *Adverbs* of *Time* are either *paſt*, *preſent* or *future*; as, *Jam*, already, now, by and by; *olim*, long ago, ſome time hereafter.

NOTE, 7. That *Interrogative Adverbs* of *Time* and *Place* doubled, or with the Adjection *cunque*, anſwer to the Engliſh Adjection *ſoever*; as, *ubiubi*, or *ubicunque*, whereſoever; *quoquo* or *quocunque*, whitherſoever, &c. And the ſame holds alſo in other *Interrogative* Words: as, *Quiſquis*, or *quicunque*, whoſoever; *quotquot*, or *quotcunque*, how many ſoever; *quantuſquantus*, or *quantuſcunque*, how great ſoever; *qualiſqualis*, or *qualiſcunque*, of what Kind or Quality ſoever; *utut*, or *utcunque*, however, or howſoever, &c.

CAP. VI.
De Præpoſitione.

I. PRæpoſitiones quæ regunt Accuſativum ſunt viginti octo, *viz.*

Ad,	*To.*
Apud,	*At.*
Ante,	*Before.*

CHAP. VI.
Of Preposition.

I. THE *Prepoſitions which govern the Accuſative are twenty-eight*, viz.

Adverſus,	*Againſt.*
Adverſum,	
Contra,	

Cis, Citra,	*On this Side.*
Circa, Circum,	*About.*
Erga,	*Towards.*
Extra,	*Without.*
Inter,	*Between, among.*
Intra,	*Within.*
Infra,	*Beneath.*
Juxta,	*Nigh to.*
Ob,	*For.*
Propter,	*For, hard by.*
Per,	*By, through.*
Præter,	*Beſides, except.*
Penes,	*In the power of.*
Poſt,	*After.*
Pone,	*Behind.*
Secus,	*By, along.*
Secundum,	*According to.*
Supra,	*Above.*
Trans,	*On the farther Side.*
Ultra,	*Beyond.*

II. Præpoſitiones quæ regunt Ablativum ſunt quindecim; *nempe*,

II. *The Prepoſitions which govern the Ablative are fifteen*, namely,

A, Ab, Abs,	*From.*
Abſque,	*Without.*
Cum,	*With.*
Clam,	*Without the Knowledge of.*
Coram,	*Before.*
De,	*Of, concerning.*
E, Ex,	*Of, out of.*
Pro,	*For.*
Præ,	*Before.*
Palam,	*With the Knowledge of.*
Sine,	*Without.*
Tenes,	*Up to.*

III. Hæ quatuor interdum Accuſativum, interdum Ablativum, regunt.

III. *Theſe four govern ſometimes the Accuſative, and ſometimes the Ablative.*

In,	*In, into.*
Sub,	*Under.*
Super,	*Above.*
Subter,	*Beneath.*

A PREPOSITION is an Indeclinable Word, ſhewing the Relation of one Subſtantive Noun to another.

NOTE, That *Pone* and *Secus* rarely occur: And *Prope*, nigh; *Uſque*, unto; *Circiter*, about; *Verſus*, towards; which are commonly reckoned among the *Prepoſitions* governing the *Accuſative*; and *Procul*, far, among thoſe governing the *Ablative*, are *Adverbs*; and do not govern a Caſe of themſelves, but by the Prepoſition *ad*, which is underſtood to the firſt four, and *a* or *ab* to the laſt. To which perhaps may be added, *Clam*, which is joined very frequently with the *Accuſative*; as, *Clam patre*, or *patrem*; *a* being underſtood to the one, and *quod ad* to the other.

Beſides the ſeparate Uſe of theſe PREPOSITIONS, there is another Uſe ariſes from them, namely, their being put before a vaſt Number of Nouns and Verbs in *Compoſition*, which creates a great Variety, and gives a peculiar Elegance and Beauty to the *Latin* Tongue.

There are five or six *Syllables*, viz. AM, DI or DIS, RE, SE, CON, which are commonly called *Inſeparable Prepoſitions*, becauſe they are only to be found in *compound* Words: However, they generally add ſomething to the Signification of the Words with which they are compounded: thus,

Am,		*round about*,		ambio,	*to ſurround.*
Di,		*aſunder*,		divello,	*to pull aſunder.*
Dis,	ſignifies		as,	diſtraho,	*to draw aſunder.*
Re,		*again*,		relego,	*to read again.*
Se,		*aſide* or *apart*,		ſepono,	*to lay aſide.*
Con,		*together*,		concreſco,	*to grow together.*

CHAP. VII.

Of Interjection.

AN INTERJECTION is an indeclinable Word, thrown into Diſcourſe to ſignify ſome Paſſion or Emotion of the Mind.

Some of them expreſs,

1. JOY: *as*, Evax, *hey!* *brave*, *io.*
2. GRIEF: *as*, Ah, hei, heu, eheu, *ah*, *alas*, *woes me.*
3. WONDER: *as*, Papæ, *O ſtrange*; Vah, *hah.*
4. PRAISE: *as*, Euge, *well done.*
5. AVERSION: *as*, Apage, *away*, *begone*, *fy*, *tuſh.*
6. EXCLAIMING: *as*, Oh, proh, *O.*
7. SURPRISE or FEAR: *as*, Atat, *ha*, *aha.*
8. IMPRECATION: *as*, Væ, *wo*, *pox on't.*
9. LAUGHTER: *as*, Ha, ha, he.
10. SILENCING: *as*, Au, 'ſt, pax, *ſilence*, *huſh*, *'ſt.*
11. CALLING: *as*, Eho, io, ho, *ſo*, *ho*, *ſoho*, *O.*
12. DERISION: *as*, Hui, *away with.*
13. ATTENTION: *as*, Hem, *hah*,

NOTE, 1. That the ſame *Interjection* denotes ſometimes one Paſſion, and ſometimes another; as, *Vah*, which is uſed to expreſs *Joy* and *Sorrow* and *Wonder*, &c.

NOTE, 2. That ſome of them are *natural* Sounds common to all Languages.

NOTE, 3. That *Nouns* are ſometimes uſed for *Interjections*; as, *Malum!* With a Pox! With a Miſchief! *Infandum!* O Shame! Fy, Fy! *Miſerum!* O wretched! *Nefas!* O the Villany.

An INTERJECTION is a compendious Way of expreſſing a whole Sentence in one Word; and uſed only to repreſent the Paſſions and Emotions of the Soul, that the Shortneſs of the one might the ſooner expreſs the Suddenneſs and Quickneſs of the other.

CHAP. VIII.

Of Conjunction.

A CONJUNCTION is an indeclinable Word, that joins Sentences together; and thereby ſhews their Dependence upon one another.

Of theſe, ſome are called,

1. COPULATIVE: *as*, Et, ac, atque, que, *and*; etiam, quoque, item, *alſo*; cum, tum, *both, and.* Alſo their contraries, Nec, neque, neu, neve, *neither, nor.*
2. DISJUNCTIVE: *as*, Aut, ve, vel, ſeu, ſive, *either, or.*
3. CONCESSIVE: *as*, Etſi, etiamſi, tametſi, licet, quanquam, quamvis, *though, although, albeit.*
4. ADVERSATIVE: *as*, Sed, verum, autem, at, aſt, atqui, *but*; tamen, attamen, veruntamen, verumenimvero, *yet, notwithſtanding, nevertheleſs.*
5. CAUSAL: *as*, Nam, namque, enim, *for*; quia, quippe, quoniam, *becauſe*; quod, *that, becauſe.*
6. ILLATIVE or RATIONAL: *as*, Ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque, *therefore*; quapropter, quocirca, *wherefore*; proinde, *therefore*; cum, quum, *ſeeing, ſince*; quandoquidem, *foraſmuchas.*
7. FINAL or PERFECTIVE: *as*, Ut, uti, *that, to the end that.*
8. CONDITIONAL: *as*, Si, ſin, *if*; dum, modo, dummodo, *provided, upon condition that*; ſiquidem, *if indeed.*
9. EXCEPTIVE or RESTRICTIVE: *as*, Ni, niſi, *unleſs, except.*
10. DIMINUTIVE: *as*, Saltem, certe, *at leaſt.*
11. SUSPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE: *as*, An, anne, num, *whether*; ne, annon, *whether, not*; necne, *or not.*
12. EXPLETIVE: *as*, Autem, vero, *now, truly*; quidem, equidem, *indeed.*
13. ORDINATIVE: *as*, Deinde, *thereafter*; denique, *finally*; inſuper, *moreover*; cæterum, *moreover, but, however.*
14. DECLARATIVE: *as*, Videlicet, ſcilicet, nempe, nimirum, &c. *to wit, namely.*

NOTE, 1. That the ſame Words, as they are taken in different Views, are both *Adverbs* and *Conjunctions*; as, *An, anne*, &c. are *Suſpenſive Conjunctions* and *Interrogative Adverbs.* The ſame may be ſaid of the *Ordinative* and *Declarative Conjunctions*, which, under another view, may be ranked under *Adverbs* of *Order* and *Explaining.* So likewiſe *Utinam*, which is commonly called an *Adverb* of *Wiſhing*, when more narrowly conſidered, is nothing elſe but the Conjunction *Uti* [that] with the Syllable *nam* added to it, and *opto* [I wiſh] underſtood: as, *Utinam adfuiſſes*; *Ut te Deus male perdat*; ſupple *Opto.* But ſince both of them are indeclinable, there is no great need of being very nice in diſtinguiſhing them.

NOTE, 2. That other Parts of Speech compounded together, ſupply the Place of *Conjunctions*: as, *Poſtea*, afterwards; *præterea*, moreover; *propterea*, becauſe, &c. which are made up of the Prepoſitions, *poſt, præter*, and *propter*, with *ea*, the Pronoun.

NOTE, 3. That ſome Conjunctions, according to their natural ORDER, ſtand firſt in a Sentence; as, *Et, aut, nec, ſi*, &c. Some, contrary to their natural Order, ſtand in the ſecond Place, viz. *autem, vero, quoque, quidem, enim*: And ſome may indifferently be put either firſt or ſecond, viz. *Namque, etenim, ſiquidem, ergo, igitur, itaque*, &c. Hence aroſe the diviſion of them into *Prepoſitive, Subjunctive*, and *Common.*

¶ CHAP. IX.

APPENDIX, containing ſome Obſervations concerning the various Diviſions and Significations of Words, eſpecially *Noun* and *Verb*.

1. ALL Words whatſoever are either *Simple* or *Compound*. A SIMPLE Word [*Simplex*] is that which was never more than one; as, *Juſtus, lego*. A COMPOUND [*Compoſitum*] is that which is made up of two or more Words, or of a Word and ſome Syllabical Adjection; as, *Injuſtus, perlego, derelinquo, egomet*.

2. All Words whatſoever are either *Primitive* or *Derivative*. A PRIMITIVE Word [*Primitivum*] is that which comes from no other Word; as, *Juſtus, lego*. A DERIVATIVE [*Derivativum*] is that which comes from another Word; as, *Juſtitia, lectio*.

I. Beſides the more general *Diviſions* of *Nouns* and *Pronouns*, mentioned p. 13. and 30. there are other particular *Diviſions* of them taken from their various *Significations* and *Derivations*: The moſt remarkable whereof are theſe.

I. With Reſpect to *Signification*.

1. A COLLECTIVE [*Collectivum*] is a Subſtantive Noun which ſignifies many in the Sing. Num.; as, *Populus*, a People; *exercitus*, an Army.

2. An INTERROGATIVE Noun or Pronoun [*Interrogativum*] is that by which we aſk a Queſtion; as, *Quis?* Who? *Uter?* Which of the two? *Qualis?* Of what Kind? *Quantus?* How great? *Quot?* How many? And theſe, when they are uſed without a Queſtion, are called INDEFINITES.

3. A RELATIVE Noun or Pronoun [*Relativum*] is an Adjective that has reſpect to ſomething ſpoken before; as, *Qui, ille, ipſe*, &c. *Alius, alter, reliquus, cætera, -um, qualis, quantus*, &c.

4. A PARTITIVE Noun or Pronoun [*Partitivum*] is an Adjective which ſignifies many ſeverally, and as it were one by one; as, *Omnis, nullus, quiſque*, &c.: Or a Part of many; as, *Quidam, aliquis, neuter, nemo*, &c.

5. A NUMERAL Noun [*Numerale*] is an Adjective which ſignifies Number, of which there are four principal Kinds:

(1.) CARDINAL, [*Numerus Cardinalis*]; as, *Unus, duo, tres*, &c.

(2.) ORDINAL, [*Ordinalis*]; as, *Primus, ſecundus, tertius*, &c.

(3.) DISTRIBUTIVE, [*Diſtributivus*]; as, *Singuli, bini, terni*, &c.

(4.) MULTIPLICATIVE, [*Multiplicativus*]; as, *Simplex, duplex, triplex*, &c.

II. With Reſpect to *Signification* and *Derivation*.

1. A PATRONYMIC Noun [*Patronymicum*] is a Subſtantive Noun derived from another Subſtantive proper, ſignifying one's Pedigree or Extraction; as, *Priamides*, the Son of *Priamus*; *Priamis*, the Daughter of *Priamus*; *Æetias*, the Daughter of *Æetes*; *Nereïne*, the Daughter of *Nereus*. *Patronymics* are generally derived from the name of the *Father*; but the Poets (for others ſeldom uſe them) derive them alſo from the *Grandfather*, or ſome other remarkable Perſon of the *Family*: Nay, ſometimes from the Founder of a Nation or People, and alſo from Countries and Cities; as, *Æacides*, the Son, Grandſon, Great-grandſon, or one of the Poſterity of *Æacus*; *Romulidæ*, the *Romans*, from their firſt King *Ro-*

mulus; *Sicilis*, *Troas*, a Woman of *Sicily*, of *Troy*, &c. *Patronymics* of Men end in *des*; of Women in *is*, *as*, and *ne*. Thoſe in *des* and *ne* are of the *Firſt*, and thoſe in *is* and *as* of the *Third* Declenſion.

2. An ABSTRACT Noun [*Abſtractum*] is a Subſtantive derived from an Adjective, expreſſing the Quality of that Adjective in general, without regard to the Thing in which the Quality is: as, *Bonitas*, Goodneſs; *Dulcedo*, Sweetneſs; from *Bonus*, good; *Dulcis*, ſweet. With reſpect to theſe Abſtracts, the Adjectives from which they come are called CONCRETES, becauſe, beſides the Quality, they alſo confuſedly ſignify ſomething as the Subject of it, without which they cannot make Senſe.

3. A GENTILE or PATRIAL Noun [*Gentile* or *Patrium*] is an Adjective derived from a Subſtantive proper, ſignifying one's Country: as, *Scotus*, *Macedo*, *Arpinas*, *Edinburgenſis*, *Taodunanus*; a man born in *Scotland*, *Macedonia*, *Arpinum*, *Edinburgh*, *Dundee*; from *Scotia*, *Macedonia*, *Arpinum*, *Edinburgum*, *Taodunum*.

4. A POSSESSIVE Noun [*Poſſeſſivum*] is an Adjective derived from a Subſtantive, whether proper or appellative, ſignifying Poſſeſſion or Property; as, *Scoticus*, *Herculeus*, *Paternus*, *Herilis*, *Fœmineus*; of or belonging to *Scotland*, *Hercules*, a Father, a Maſter, a Woman; from *Scotia*, *Hercules*, *Pater*, *Herus*, *Fœmina*.

5. A DIMINUTIVE Noun [*Diminutivum*] is a Subſtantive or Adjective derived from another Subſtantive or Adjective reſpectively, importing a Diminution or Leſſening of its Signification: as, *Libellus*, a little Book; *Chartula*, a little Paper; *Opuſculum*, a little Work; from *liber*, *charta*, *opus*; *Parvulus*, very little; *Candidulus*, pretty white; from *parvus*, *candidus*. Theſe for the moſt part end in *lus*, *la*, or *lum*, and are generally of the ſame Gender with their Primitives.

6. A DENOMINATIVE Noun [*Denominativum*] is a Subſtantive or Adjective derived from another Noun: as, *Gratia*, Favour; *Vinea*, a Vineyard; *Senator*, a Senator; from *Gratus*, *vinum*, *ſenex*: *Cœleſtis*, heavenly; *Humanus*, humane; *Aureus*, golden; from *cœlum*, *homo*, *aurum*.

7. A VERBAL Noun [*Verbale*] is a Subſtantive or Adjective derived from a Verb: as, *Amor*, Love; *Doctrina*, Learning; *Lectio*, a Leſſon; *Auditus*, Hearing; from *Amo*, *doceo*, *lego*, *audio*: *Amabilis*, lovely; *Capax*, capable; *Volucer*, ſwift; from *Amo*, *capio*, *volo*.

8. Laſtly, There are ſome Nouns derived from *Participles*, *Adverbs*, and *Prepoſitions*: as, *Fictitius*, Counterfeit; *Craſtinus*, belonging to the Morrow; *Contrarius*, contrary; from *Fictus*, *cras*, *contra*.

NOTE, That the ſame Nouns, according to the different Reſpects in which they are conſidered, may ſometimes be ranked under one, and ſometimes under another of the above mentioned Claſſes: as, *Quis* is an *Interrogative*, *Relative*, or *Partitive*; *Pietas*, an *Abſtract* or *Denominative*.

II. *Pronouns* are divided into four Claſſes; *viz.*

1. DEMONSTRATIVES; *Ego*, *tu*, *ſui*.
2. RELATIVES; *Ille*, *ipſe*, *iſte*, *hic*, *is*, *quis*, *qui*.
3. POSSESSIVES; *Meus*, *tuus*, *ſuus*, *noſter*, *veſter*.
4. PATRIALS or GENTILES; *Noſtras*, *veſtras*, *cujas*.

Of them alſo two are Interrogatives, *Quis* and *cujas*.

III. 1. Verbs, with Reſpect to their *Figure* or *Frame*, are either SIMPLE; as, *Amo*, I love: Or COMPOUND; as, *Redamo*, I love again.

2. With reſpect to their *Species* or *Origin*, are either PRIMITIVE; as, *Lego*, I read: Or DERIVATIVE; as, *Lectito*, I read frequently.

3. With reſpect to their *Conjugation*, are either REGULAR; as, *Amo*: Or IRREGULAR; as, *Volo, vis*, &c.

4. With reſpect to their *Conſtituent Parts*, are either COMPLETE; as, *Amo*: Or DEFECTIVE; as, *Inquam*: Or REDUNDANT; as, *Edo, edis*, and *es*, &c.

5. With reſpect to their *Perſons*, are either PERSONAL; as, *Amo*: Or IMPERSONAL; as, *Pœnitet*.

6. With reſpect to their *Terminations*, they end either in *O*; as, *Amo*: Or in *R*; as, *Amor*: Or in *M*; as, *Sum*.

7. With reſpect to their *Signification*, Verbs are either *Subſtantive* or *Adjective*.

(1.) A SUBSTANTIVE Verb [*Subſtantivum*] is that which ſignifies ſimply the Affirmation of Being or Exiſtence; as, *Sum, fio, exiſto*, I am.

(2.) An ADJECTIVE Verb [*Adjectivum*] is that which, together with the Signification of Being, has a particular Signification of its own; as, *Amo*, i. e. *Sum amans*, I am loving.

An *Adjective* Verb is divided into *Active, Paſſive*, and *Neuter*.

(1.) An ACTIVE Verb [*Activum*] is that which affirms Action of its Perſon or Nominative before it; as, *Amo, loquor, curro*.

(2.) A PASSIVE Verb [*Paſſivum*] is that which affirms Paſſion of its Perſon or Nominative before it; as, *Amor*.

(3.) A NEUTER Verb [*Neutrum*] is that which affirms neither Action nor Paſſion of its Nominative; but ſimply ſignifies the State, Poſture, or Quality of Things; as *Sto, ſedeo, maneo, duro, vireo, flaveo, ſapio, quieſco*, &c. *to ſtand, ſit, ſtay, endure, to be green, to be yellow, to be wiſe, to reſt*.

An *Active* Verb is again divided into *Tranſitive* or *Intranſitive*.

[1.] An *Active* TRANSITIVE Verb [*Tranſitivum*] is that whoſe Action paſſeth from the Agent to ſome other Thing; as, *Amo Patrem*.

[2.] An *Active* INTRANSITIVE Verb [*Intranſitivum*] is that whoſe Action paſſeth not from the Agent to any other; as, *Curro*, I run; *ambulo*, I walk.

When to any Verb you put the Queſtion WHOM? or WHAT? if a rational anſwer can be returned, the Verb is *Tranſitive*; as, *Whom*, or *What do you teach?* Anſ. *A Boy, the Grammar*. If not, it is *Intranſitive*; as, *What do you run, go, come, live, ſleep*, &c. to which no rational Anſwer can be given, unleſs it be by a Word of like Signification, which ſometimes indeed theſe Verbs have after them; as, *Vivo vitam jucundam*, I live a pleaſant life; *Eo iter longum*, I go a long journey.

NOTE, 1. That the ſame Verb is ſometimes *Tranſitive*, and ſometimes *Intranſitive*; as, *Ver incipit*, the Spring begins, *Cic. Incipere facinus*, to begin an action, *Plaut.*

NOTE, 2. That *Neuter* and *Intranſitive* Verbs are often Engliſhed with the Signs of a Paſſive Verb; as, *Caleo*, I am hot; *Palleo*, I am pale; *Jacobus abiit*, James is gone.

NOTE, 3. That *Neuter* and *Intranſitive* Verbs want the Paſſive Voice unleſs *impersonally* uſed, as the *Intranſitive* Verbs moſt frequently and elegantly are; as, *Pugnatur, itur, ventum eſt*.

Tho' all Verbs whatſoever, with reſpect to their Signification, belong to ſome one or other of the foregoing Claſſes; yet becauſe Grammarians, to

gether with the *Signification* of Verbs, are obliged alſo to conſider their *Termination*; and finding that all *Active* Verbs did not end in *o*, neither all *Paſſives* in *or*, it was judged convenient to add to the former two or three other *Claſſes* or *Kinds* of them, *viz.* *Deponent*, *Common*, and *Neuter-Paſſive*.

[1.] A DEPONENT Verb [*Deponens*] is that which has a Paſſive Termination, but an Active or Neuter Signification: as, *Loquor*, I ſpeak; *Morior*, I die.

[2.] A COMMON Verb [*Commune*] is that which under a Paſſive Termination has a Signification either Active or Paſſive: as, *Criminor*, I accuſe, *or* I am accuſed; *Dignor*, I think, *or* I am thought worthy.

[3.] A NEUTER-PASSIVE [*Neutro-paſſivum*] is that which is half Active and half Paſſive in its Termination, but in its Signification is either wholly Paſſive; as, *Fio*, *factus ſum*, To be made: Or wholly Active or Neuter; as, *Audeo*, *auſus ſum*, To dare; *Gaudeo*, *gaviſus ſum*, To rejoice.

8. To omit the other Kinds of *Derivative* Verbs, which are not very material, there are three Kinds of them derived from Verbs, which deſerve to be remarked; *viz.* *Frequentatives*, *Inceptives*, and *Deſideratives*.

[1.] FREQUENTATIVES [*Verba Frequentativa*] ſignify Frequency of Action. They are formed from the laſt Supine, by changing *atu* into *ito* from Verbs of the firſt, and *u* into *o* from Verbs of the other three Conjugations. They are all of the firſt; as, *Clamito*, To cry frequently, from *clamo*; *Dormito*, To ſleep often, from *dormio*. From them alſo are formed other Frequentatives; as, *Curro*, *curſo*, *curſito*; *jacio*, *jacto*, *jactito*; *pello*, *pulſo*, *pulſito*, and *pulto*.

[2.] INCEPTIVES [*Verba Inceptiva*] ſignify that a Thing is begun and tending to Perfection. They are formed from the Second Perſon Singular Pref. Ind. by adding *co*. They are all of the third Conjugation, and want both Preterite and Supine; as, *Caleo*, *cales*, *caleſco*, I grow or wax warm.

[3.] DESIDERATIVES [*Verba Deſiderativa*] ſignify a Deſire of Action. They are formed from the laſt Supine by adding *rio*. They are all of the fourth Conjugation, and generally want both Preterite and Supine; as, *Eſturio*, I deſire to ſup; *Eſurio*, I am hungry, *or* I deſire to eat.

9. Laſtly, In *Conſtruction*, Verbs receive Names from their more particular Significations; as, *Vocative* Verbs, or Verbs of *naming*, Verbs of *remembering*, of *want*, of *teaching*, of *accuſing*, &c.

In the preceding Diviſion *of* Verbs, *with Reſpect to their* Signification, *I have receded a little from the common* Method; *and in particular I have given a different Account of* Neuter *Verbs from that commonly received by* Grammarians, *who compriſe under them all* Intranſitive *Verbs, though their* Significations *be ever ſo much* Active. *But this I did, partly from the Reaſon of the* Name, *which imports a* Negation *both of* Action *and* Paſſion, *and partly to give a diſtinct View of the* Significations *of* Verbs, *without Regard to their* Terminations, *which in that Reſpect are purely* accidental *and* arbitrary.

I have alſo excluded from the Diviſions *of* Verbs *thoſe called* NEUTRAL PASSIVES, [*Lat.* Neutra paſſiva], *becauſe originally they are* Active *Verbs; for the Primary* Signification *of* vapulo *is* pereo *or* ploro; *of* exulo, extra ſolum eo; *of* veneo, venum eo; *of* nubo, velo. Liceo *indeed is a very* Singular *Verb; for in the* Active *Voice it ſignifies* paſſively, *and in the* Paſſive actively.

PARS TERTIA.

De Sententiis, ſive Oratione.

SENTENTIA eſt quævis animi cogitatio, duabus aut pluribus vocibus ſimul junctis enuntiata: ut, *Tu legis; Tu legis libros; Tu legis libros bonos; Tu legis libros bonos domi* (*a*).

PART THIRD.

Of Sentences, or Speech.

A *SENTENCE is any Thought of the Mind expreſſed by two or more Words put together*: as, You read; You read Books; You read good Books; You read good Books at home.

CAP. I.

De Syntaxi, ſive Conſtructione.

SYNTAXIS eſt recta vocum in Oratione Compoſitio.

Ejus partes ſunt duæ, *Concordantia* et *Regimen* (*b*).

CHAP. I.

Of Syntax or Conſtruction.

SYNTAX is the right Ordering of Words in Speech.

Its Parts are two, Concord *and* Government.

(*a*) We are now arrived at the Principal Part of *Grammar*; for the great End of Speech being to convey our Thoughts unto others, it will be of little Uſe to us to have a ſtock of Words, and to know what Changes can be made upon them, unleſs we can alſo apply them to Practice, and make them anſwer the great Purpoſes for which they are intended. To the attainment of this End, there are two Things abſolutely neceſſary, *viz.* I. That in Speech we diſpoſe and frame our Words according to the Laws and Rules eſtabliſhed among thoſe whoſe Language we ſpeak. II. That in like Manner we know what is ſpoken or written, and be able to explain it in due Order, and reſolve it into the ſeveral Parts of which it is made up. The firſt of theſe is called SYNTAX or CONSTRUCTION, and the ſecond is named EXPOSITION or RESOLUTION. The firſt ſhows us how to ſpeak the Language ourſelves, and the ſecond how to underſtand it when ſpoken by others. But it muſt be owned, that there is ſuch a neceſſary Connection between them, that he who is Maſter of the firſt cannot be ignorant of the ſecond.

(*b*) NOTE, I. That the Difference between *Concord* and *Government* conſiſts chiefly in this, that in *Concord* there can no Change be made in the *Accidents*, that is, *Gender*, *Caſe*, *Number*, or *Perſon* of the one, but the like Change muſt alſo be made in the other; but, in *Government*, the firſt Word (if declinable) may be changed, without any Change in the ſecond.

In *Concord*, the firſt Word may be called the *Word directing*, and the

Concordantia eſt quando una dictio concordat cum altera in quibuſdam accidentibus.

Regimen eſt quando dictio regit certum caſum.

Concord *is when one Word agrees with another in ſome Accidents.*

Government *is when a Word governs a certain Caſe.*

I. *De Concordantia.*

CConcordantia eſt quadruplex.

1. *Adjectivi* cum *Subſtantivo.*
2. *Verbi* cum *Nominativo.*
3. *Relativi* cum *Antecedente.*
4. *Subſtantivi* cum *Subſtantivo.*

REGULA I.

ADjectivum concordat cum Subſtantivo in genere, numero, et caſu; ut,

[a] *Vir* [b] *bonus.*
[a] *Fœmina* [b] *caſta.*
[b] *Dulce* [a] *pomum.*

I. Of Concord.

CConcord *is fourfold.*

1. *Of an* Adjective *with a* Subſtantive.
2. *Of a* Verb *with a* Nominative.
3. *Of a* Relative *with an* Antecedent.
4. *Of a* Subſtantive *with a* Subſtantive.

RULE I.

AN *Adjective agrees with a Subſtantive in Gender, Number, and Caſe; as,*

A good Man.
A chaſte Woman.
A ſweet Apple.

---

ond the *Word directed:* In *Government,* the firſt is called the *Word governing,* and the ſecond the *Word governed.*

NOTE, 2. That for the greater Eaſe both of Maſter and Scholar, we ave noted thoſe Words wherein the Force of each Example lieth, with he Letters [a] and [b]: the Word *Directing* or *Governing* with [a], and he Word *Directed* or *Governed* with [b]: or where there are two Words *irecting* or *Governing,* the firſt with [a], and the ſecond with [aa]; and here two Words *Directed* or *Governed,* the firſt with [b], and the ſecond ith [bb].

Number 1. NOTE, 1. That the Way to find out the *Subſtantive,* is to k the Queſtion WHO or WHAT? to the *Adjective:* for that which anwers to it is the *Subſtantive.* And the ſame Queſtion put to the *Verb* or *elative,* diſcovers the *Nominative* or *Antecedent.*

NOTE, 2. That another *Adjective* ſometimes ſupplies the Place of a *ubſtantive;* as, *Amicus certus,* A ſure Friend; *Bona ferina,* Good Veniſon: *Homo* being underſtood to *Amicus,* and *Caro* to *Ferina.*

NOTE, 3. That the *Subſtantive* THING [*Negotium*] is moſt frequently nderſtood; and then the *Adjective* is always put in the *Neuter* Gender, if it were a *Subſtantive;* as, *Triſte* [ſupple *Negotium*], i. e. *Res triſtis,* ſad Thing. *Bona* [ſupple *Negotia*], i. e. *Res bonæ,* Good Things.

REG. II.

2 VERBUM concordat cum Nominativo ante ſe in numero et perſona; ut,

[a] *Ego* [b] *lego.*
[a] *Tu* [b] *ſcribis.*
[a] *Præceptor* [b] *docet.*

RULE II.

A Verb agrees with the Nominative before it in Number and Perſon; as,

I read.
You write.
The Maſter teacheth.

ANNOTATIONES.

ANNOTATIONS.

3 1. VERBA Subſtantiva, Vocandi et Geſtûs; habent utrinque Nominativum ad eandem rem pertinentem; ut,

[b] *Ego* [a] *ſum* [bb] *diſcipulus.*
[b] *Tu* [a] *vocaris* [bb] Joannes.
[b] *Illa* [a] *incedit* [bb] *Regina.*

1. *Subſtantive Verbs, Verbs of Naming and Geſture, have a Nominative both before and after them, belonging to the ſame Thing; as,*

I am a Scholar.
You are named *John.*
She walks [as] a Queen.

4 2. ¶ EXCEP. Infinitivus Modus Accuſativum ante ſe habet; ut,

Gaudeo [b] *te* [a] *valere.*

2. ¶ *EXCEP. The Infinitive Mood has an Accuſative before it; as,*

I am glad that you are well.

Num. 2. NOTE, That the *Infinitive* Mood frequently ſupplies the Place of the *Nominative*; as, *Mentiri non eſt meum*, To lie is not mine, [or my Property].

Num. 3. 1. *Subſtantive* Verbs are, *Sum, fio, forem*, and *exiſto.*

2. Verbs of *Naming* are theſe Paſſives, *Appellor, dicor, vocor, nominor, nuncupor*; to which add, *Videor, exiſtimor, creor, conſtituor, ſalutor, deſignor*, &c.

3. Verbs of *Geſture* are, *Eo, incedo, venio, cubo, ſto, ſedeo, evado, fugio, dormio, ſomnio, moneo*, &c.

NOTE, That any *Verb* may have after it the *Nominative*, when it *belongs* to the ſame Thing with the *Nominative* before it; as, *Audivi hoc puer*, I heard it being [or when I was] a Boy. *Defendi rempublicam adoleſcens, non deſeram ſenex*, I defended the Commonwealth [when I was] a young Man, I will not deſert it [now that I am] old. *Cic.*

Num. 4. NOTE, That when the Particle THAT [in *Lat.* QUOD or UT] comes between two *Verbs*, it is elegantly left out, by turning the *Nominative* Caſe into the *Accuſative*, and the *Verb* into the *Infinitive* Mood; as, *Aiunt regem adventare*, They ſay [that] the King is coming; rather than, *Aiunt, quod rex adventat. Turpe eſt eos qui bene nati ſunt turpiter vivere.* It is a ſhameful Thing that they who are well born ſhould live baſely; rather than, *Ut ii turpiter vivant.* See *p.* 51.

3. ¶ *ESSE* habet eundem caſum poſt ſe quem ante ſe: ut,

[b] *Petrus cupit* [a] *eſſe* [bb] *vir doctus.*

Scio [b] *Petrum* [a] *eſſe* [bb] *virum doctum.*

[b] *Mihi* [bb] *negligenti* [a] *eſſe non licet.*

REG. III.

*RELATIVUM *Qui, quæ, quod,* concordat cum Antecedente in genere et numero: ut,

[a] *Vir ſapit* [b] *qui pauca loquitur.*

1. Si nullus interveniat Nominativus inter Relativum et Verbum, Relativum erit Verbo Nominativus: ut,

Præceptor [a] *qui* [b] *docet.*

3. ¶ ESSE *hath the ſame Caſe after it that it hath before it: as,* 5

Peter deſires to be a learned Man.

I know that Peter is a learned Man.

I am not allowed to be negligent.

RULE III.

THE *Relative* Qui, quæ, quod, *agrees with the Antecedent in Gender and Number: as,* 6

He is a wiſe Man who ſpeaks little.

1. *If no Nominative comes between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative ſhall be the Nominative to the Verb: as,*

The Maſter who teacheth.

Num. 5. NOTE, 1. That we frequently ſay, *Licet nobis eſſe bonos*, We may be good. *Tibi expedit eſſe ſedulum*, It is expedient for you to be diligent. *Nemini unquam nocuit fuiſſe pium*, It never hurt any Man that he had been pious. But then the Accuſative, *Nos, te, illum*, &c. is underſtood: Thus, *Licet nobis* [*nos*] *eſſe bonos*, &c.

NOTE, 2. That if *Eſſe*, and the other *Infinitives* of *Subſtantive* Verbs, Verbs of *Naming*, &c. have no *Accuſative* or *Dative* before them, the Word that follows (whether *Subſtantive* or *Adjective*) is to be put in the *Nominative*; as, *Dicitur eſſe vir*, He is ſaid to be a Man. *Non videtur eſſe facturus*, He ſeems not about to do it. *Nemo debet dici beatus ante ſuum obitum*, No Man ſhould be called happy before his Death.

Num. 6. NOTE, 1. That the *Antecedent* is a *Subſtantive* Noun that goes before the *Relative*, and is again underſtood to the Relative. Wherefore it will not be amiſs to teach the Scholar to ſupply it every where, thus: *Beware of Idleneſs, which* [Idleneſs] *is an Enemy to Virtue*, Cave ſegnitiem, quæ [*ſegnities*] eſt inimica virtuti. Nay *Cicero* himſelf, but eſpecially *Cæſar*, frequently repeats the *Subſtantive*; as, *In oppidum perfugiſti, quo in oppido*, &c. You fled to a Town, in which Town, *Cic. Diem dicunt, quo die ad ripam Rhodani conveniant*, They appoint a Day, on which Day they ſhould meet upon the Bank of the River *Rhone*, *Cæſ.*

NOTE, 2. That when the *Relative* reſpects a whole *Sentence*, it is put in the Neuter Gender; as, *Johannes mortuus eſt, quod mihi ſummo dolori eſt*, John is dead, which is a great Grief to me.

NOTE, 3. That the *Perſon* of the *Relative* is always the ſame with that of its *Antecedent*; as, *Ego qui doceo*, I who teach. *Tu qui diſcis*, You who learn. *Lectio quæ docetur*, The Leſſon which is taught.

8 2. At ſi interveniat Nominativus inter Relativum et Verbum, Relativum erit ejus caſûs quem Verbum aut Nomen ſequens, vel Præpoſitio præcedens, regere ſolent: ut,

2. *But if a Nominative comes between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative ſhall be of that Caſe which the Verb or Noun following, or the Prepoſition going before, uſe to govern: as,*

Deus [b] *quem* [a] *colimus.* — God whom we worſhip.
[b] *Cujus* [a] *munere vivimus.* — By whoſe Gift we live,
[b] *Cui nullus eſt* [a] *ſimilis.* — To whom there is none like.
[a] *A* [b] *quo facta ſunt omnia.* — By whom all things were made.

ANNOTATIO.

9 ¶ Duo vel plura Subſtantiva ſingularia, Conjunctione [*et, ac, atque,* &c.] copulata, habent Adjectivum, Verbum, vel Relativum Plurale: ut,

[a] *Petrus et* [aa] *Joannes* [b] *qui* [b] *ſunt* [b] *docti.* — Peter and John who are learned.

¶ *Two or more Subſtantives ſingular, coupled together with a Conjunction* [et, ac, atque, &c.] *have a Verb, Adjective, or Relative Plural: as,*

Num. 9. NOTE, 1. That when the *Subſtantives* are of different *Genders*, and ſignify Perſons, the *Adjective* or *Relative Plural* muſt agree with the *Maſculine* rather than the *Feminine*; as, *Pater et mater qui ſunt mortui*, The Father and Mother who are dead.

EXCEP. But if the *Subſtantives*, or any one of them, ſignify Things *without Life*, the *Adjective* or *Relative Plural* muſt be put in the *Neuter* Gender; as, *Divitiæ, decus, gloria, in oculis ſita ſunt*, Riches, Honour, and Glory, are ſet before your Eyes.

NOTE, 2. That when two or more *Nominatives* are of different *Perſons*, the *Verb Plural* muſt agree with the *Firſt Perſon* rather than the *Second*, and the *Second* rather than the *Third*; as, *Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus*, If you and *Tullia* are well, I and *Cicero* are well.

NOTE, 3. That the *Adjective* or *Verb* frequently agree with the *Subſtantive* or *Nominative* that is neareſt them, and are underſtood to the reſt; as, *Et ego in culpa ſum et tu*, Both I and you are in the Fault: Or, *Et ego et tu es in culpa. Nihil hic deeſt niſi carmina*, There is nothing here wanting but charms; or, *Nihil hic niſi carmina deſunt.* This Manner of Conſtruction is moſt uſual when the different Words ſignify one and the ſame Thing, or much to the ſame Purpoſe; as, *Mens, ratio, et conſilium in ſenibus eſt*, Underſtanding, Reaſon, and Prudence, is in old Men.

NOTE, 4. That a *Collective* Noun, becauſe it is equivalent to a *Plural* Number, has ſometimes the *Adjective* or *Verb* in the Plural Number; as, *Pars virgis cæſi*, A Part of them were ſcourged, *Turba ruunt*, The Crowd ruſh.

REG. IV.

UNUM Subſtantivum concordat cum alio eandem rem ſignificante in caſu: ut,

[a] Cicero [b] *Orator.*
[a] *Urbs* [b] Edinburgum.
[a] *Filius* [b] *deliciæ matris ſuæ (a).*

RULE IV.

ONE *Subſtantive agrees with another, ſignifying the ſame Thing in Caſe: as,* 10

Cicero the Orator.
The City *Edinburgh.*
A Son the Darling of his Mother.

II. *De Regimine.*

REGIMEN eſt triplex;

1. *Nominum.*
2. *Verborum.*
3. *Vocum indeclinabilium.*

II. Of Government.

GOVERNMENT *is threefold*;

1. Of Nouns.
2. Of Verbs.
3. Of Words indeclinable.

I. REGIMEN *Nominum.*

§ 1. *Subſtantivorum.*

REG. I.

UNUM Subſtantivum regit aliud rem diverſam ſignificans in Genitivo: ut,

[a] *Amor* [b] *Dei.*
[a] *Lex* [b] *naturæ.*

I. *The* Government *of Nouns.*

§ 1. Of Subſtantives.

RULE I.

ONE *Subſtantive governs another ſignifying a different Thing in the Genitive: as,* 11

The Love of God.
The Law of Nature.

ANNOTATIONES.

* 1. Si poſterius Subſtantivum adjunctum habeat Adje- 1. *If the laſt Subſtantive have an Adjective of Praiſe* 12

(*a*) To theſe four *Concords* ſome add a *fifth*, *viz.* That of the *Reſponſive*, agreeing with its *Interrogative* in Caſe; as, *Quis dedit tibi pecuniam?* *Pater.* Who gave you Money? My Father. *Quo cares? Libro.* What do you want? A Book. But this ought not to be made a principal Rule: For the *Reſponſive*, or the word that anſwers the Queſtion, does not depend upon the *Interrogative*, but upon the *Verb*, or ſome other Word joined with it; which, becauſe ſpoken immediately before, is generally underſtood in the Anſwer: Thus, *Quis dedit tibi pecuniam? Pater* [dedit mihi pecuniam.] *Quo cares?* [*Careo*] *Libro.*

Num. 11. NOTE, 1. That OF or *'s* is the ordinary *Sign* of this *Genitive*. NOTE, 2. That the Relative Pronouns, *Ejus, illius, cujus*, &c. Engliſhed *his, hers, its, theirs, thereof, whereof, whoſe*, have their *Subſtantives* generally underſtood; as, *Liber ejus* [ſupple *Hominis, Fœminæ*, &c.] His Book or her Book; *Libri eorum*, [ſupple *Hominum, Fœminarum*, &c.] Their Books.

ſtivum laudis vel vituperii, in Genitivo vel Ablativo poni poteſt; ut,

* *Vir* [b] *ſummæ* [b] *prudentiæ*, vel [b] *ſumma* [b] *prudentia.*

a *Puer* [b] *probæ* [b] *indolis*, vel [b] *probâ* [b] *indole.*

or Diſpraiſe joined with it, it may be put in the Genitive or Ablative: as,

A Man of great Wiſdom.

A Boy of a good Diſpoſition.

13 * 2. Adjectivum in Neutro genere abſque Subſtantivo regit Genitivum; ut,

a *Multum* [b] *pecuniæ.*

a *Quid* [b] *rei?*

2. *An Adjective in the Neuter Gender without a Subſtantive governs the Genitive: as,*

Much Money.

What is the Matter?

§ 2. *Adjectivorum.*

REG. 1.

14 * ADJECTIVA verbalia, vel affectionem animi ſignificantia, Genitivum poſtulant: ut,

a *Avidus* [b] *gloriæ.*

a *Ignarus* [b] *fraudis.*

a *Memor* [b] *beneficiorum.*

§ 2. Of Adjectives.

RULE 1.

VERBAL Adjectives, or ſuch as ſignify an Affection of the Mind, require the Genitive: as,

Deſirous of Glory.

Ignorant of Fraud.

Mindful of Favours.

Num. 13. This is more elegant than *Multa pecunia: Quæ res?*

NOTE, 1. That theſe *Adjectives* which thus govern the *Genitive*, as if they were *Subſtantives*, are generally ſuch as ſignify *Quantity*; as, *Multum, tantum, quantum, plus, plurimum.*

NOTE, 2. That *Plus* and *Quid* always govern the *Genitive*, and upon that Account are by many thought real *Subſtantives.*

Num. 14. To this Rule belong,

1. *Adjectives* of DESIRE; as, *Cupidus, ambitioſus, avarus, ſtudioſus, curioſus.*

2. Of KNOWLEDGE; as, *Peritus, gnarus, prudens, callidus, providus, doctus, docilis, præſcius, præſagus, certus, memor, eruditus, expertus, conſultus*, &c.

3. Of IGNORANCE; as, *Ignarus, rudis, imperitus, neſcius, inſcius, incertus, dubius, anxius, ſollicitus, immemor.*

4. Of GUILT; as, *Conſcius, convictus, manifeſtus, ſuſpectus, reus.*

5. *Verbals* in AX and NS; as, *Edax, capax, ferax, fugax, tenax, pervicax*: And *Amans, cupiens, appetens, patiens, fugiens, ſitiens, negligens*, &c.

6. To which may be referred, *Æmulus, munificus, parcus, prodigus, profuſus, ſecurus.*

REG. II.

PARTITIVA et partitivè poſita, Comparativa, Superlativa, Interrogativa, et quædam Numeralia, Genitivo plurali gaudent: ut,

a *Aliquis* b *Philoſophorum.*
a *Senior* b *fratrum.*
a *Doctiſſimus* b *Romanorum.*

a *Quis* b *noſtrum?*
a *Una* b *Muſarum.*
a *Octavus* b *ſapientum.*

RULE II.

PARTITIVES and 15 *Words placed partitively, Comparatives, Superlatives, Interrogatives, and ſome Numerals, govern the Genitive plural: as,*

Some one of the Philoſophers.
The elder of the Brothers.
The moſt learned of the *Romans.*
Which of us?
One of the Muſes.
The eighth of the wiſe men.

REG. III.

ADJECTIVA ſignificantia commodum vel incommodum, ſimilitudinem vel diſſimilitudinem, regunt Dativum: ut,

a *Utilis* b *bello.*
a *Pernicioſus* b *reipublicæ.*
a *Similis* b *patri.*

RULE III.

ADJECTIVES ſignify- 16 *ing Profit or Diſprofit, Likeneſs or Unlikeneſs, govern the Dative: as,*

Profitable for War.
Pernicious to the Common-wealth.
Like his Father.

Num. 15. NOTE, 1. That it is eaſy to know when this Rule takes place, by reſolving the *Genitive* into *inter* with the *Acouſ.* or *de, e, ex,* with the *Abl*; as, *Optimus Regum,* The beſt of Kings; i. e. *Optimus inter Reges,* or *de, e, ex Regibus.*

NOTE, 2. That when there are two *Subſtantives* of different *Genders,* the *Partitive,* &c. rather agrees with the firſt than the laſt; as, *Indus fluminum maximus,* Cic. *Leo animalium fortiſſimus,* Plin. Otherwiſe it is of the ſame Gender with the *Subſtantive* it governs; as, *Pauca animalium, Unaquæque fœminarum.*

NOTE, 3. That *Partitives,* &c. take the *Genitive Singular* of *Collective* Nouns, and do not neceſſarily agree with them in *Gender*; as, *Præſtantiſſimus noſtræ civitatis,* Cic. *Nympharum ſanguinis una,* Virg.

Num. 16. NOTE, 1. That ſome of theſe *Adjectives* govern alſo the *Genitive*; as, *Amicus, inimicus, ſocius, vicinus, par, æqualis, ſimilis, diſſimilis, proprius, communis,* &c.

NOTE, 2. That *Adjectives* ſignifying *Motion* or *Tendency* to a Thing, chuſe rather the *Accuſative* with AD than the *Dative*; ſuch as, *Proclivis, pronus, propenſus, velox, celer, tardus, piger,* &c.; as,

Eſt piger ad pœnas Princeps, ad præmia velox. Ovid.

NOTE, 3. That *Adjectives* ſignifying *Fitneſs* or the *contrary,* may have either of them; as, *Aptus, ineptus, bello* or *ad bellum.*

17 ¶ Verbalia in BILIS et DUS regunt Dativum: ut, [a] *Amandus* vel [a] *amabilis* [b] *omnibus*.

Verbals in BILIS *and* DUS *govern the Dative: as,*

To be beloved of all Men.

REG. IV.

18* ADJECTIVA dimensionem significantia regunt Accusativum mensuræ: ut,

Columna sexaginta [b] *pedes* [a] *alta*.

RULE IV.

ADJECTIVES signifying Dimension govern the Accusative of Measure: as,

A Pillar sixty Feet high.

REG. V.

19* COMPARATIVUS regit Ablativum, qui resolvitur per QUAM: ut,

[a] *Dulcior* [b] *melle*.

[a] *Præstantior* [b] *auro*.

RULE V.

THE Comparative Degree governs the Ablative, which is resolved by Quam: *as,*

Sweeter than Honey.

Better than Gold.

REG. VI.

20 HÆC Adjectiva, *Dignus, Indignus, Contentus, Præditus, Captus*, et *Fretus*: Item, *Natus, Satus, Ortus*,

RULE VI.

THESE Adjectives, Dignus, Indignus, Contentus, Præditus, Captus, *and* Fretus: *Also*, Natus, Satus, Or-

---

Num 17. OF or BY is the ordinary Sign of this *Dative*.

NOTE, That *Participles* of the *Preter Tense*, and *Passive* Verbs also, especially among the Poets, have frequently the *Dative*, instead of the *Ablative* with A or AB: as, *Nullus eorum mihi visus est*, None of them was seen by me. *Non audior ulli*, I am not heard by any.

Num. 18. The *Adjectives* of DIMENSION are, *Altus*, high *or* deep; *crassus* or *densus*, thick; *latus*, broad; *longus*, long; *profundus*, deep. The Names of MEASURE are, *Digitus*, an Inch; *palmus*, an Hand-breadth; *pes*, a Foot; *cubitus*, a Cubit; *ulna*, an Ell; *passus*, a Pace, &c.

NOTE, 1. That Verbs signifying *Dimension* likewise have the *Accusative* of *Measure*; as, *Patet tres ulnas*, It is three Ells large, *Virg.*

NOTE, 2. That sometimes the Word of *Measure* is put in the *Ablative*; as, *Fossa sex cubitis alta, duodecim lata*, Liv. *Venter ejus exstat sesquipede*, Pers. And sometimes, but rarely, in the *Genitive*; as, *Nec longiores duodenûm pedum*, Plin.

Num. 19. Let the following Examples be observed and imitated.—*Multo melior*, Much better. *Nihilo pejor*, Nothing worse. *Major solito*, Greater than usual. *Quo diligentior est, eo doctior evades*, The more diligent you are, the more learned you will become. *Quanto superbior, tanto vilior*, The prouder, the less worth. *Nihil Virgilio doctius*, There is none more learned than *Virgil*.

Editus, et ſimilia, Ablativum petunt: ut,

[a] *Dignus* [b] *honore.*
[a] *Præditus* [b] *virtute.*
[a] *Contentus* [b] *parvo.*
[a] *Captus* [b] *oculis.*
[a] *Fretus* [b] *viribus.*
[a] *Ortus* [b] *regibus.*

REG. VII.

ADJECTIVUM copiæ aut inopiæ regit Genitivum vel Ablativum: ut,

[a] *Plenus* [b] *iræ* vel [b] *irâ.*
[a] *Inops* [b] *rationis.*

tus, Editus, *and the like, require the Ablative: as,*

Worthy of Honour.
Endued with Virtue.
Content with little.
Blind.
Truſting to his Strength.
Deſcended of Kings.

RULE VII.

AN *Adjective of Plenty or Want governs the Genitive or Ablative: as,* 21

Full of Anger.
Void of Reaſon.

II. REGIMEN *Verborum.*

§ 1. *Perſonalium.*

REG. I.

SUM quoties poſſeſſionem, proprietatem, aut officium ſignificat, regit Genitivum: ut,

[a] *Eſt* [b] *regis punire rebelles.*

[b] *Inſipientis* [a] *eſt dicere, Non putâram.*
[b] *Militum* [a] *eſt ſuo duci parere.*

¶ Excipiuntur hi Nominativi, *Meum, tuum, ſuum,*

II. *The* Government *of* Verbs.

§ 1. Of Perſonal Verbs.

RULE I.

SUM, *when it ſignifies Poſſeſſion, Property, or Duty, governs the Genitive: as,* 22

It belongs to the King to puniſh Rebels.
It is the Property of a Fool to ſay, I had not thought.
It is the Duty of Soldiers to obey their General.

¶ *Theſe Nominatives,* Me- 23
um, tuum, ſuum, noſtrum, ve-

Num. 21. NOTE, 1. That *Diſtentus, gravidus, refertus,* and *orbus, vacuus, viduus,* chuſe rather the *Ablative*; *Indigus, compos,* and *impos,* the *Genitive.*

NOTE, 2. That ſome comprehend *Opus* and *Uſus,* when they ſignify *Neceſſity,* under this Rule; as, *Quid opus eſt verbis?* What need is there of Words? *Ovid. Nunc viribus uſus,* Now there is need of Strength, *Virg.* But it is to be remarked, that theſe are Subſtantive Nouns, the very ſame with *Opus, operis,* a Work, and *Uſus, uſus,* Uſe; and have the *Ablative* after them, becauſe of the *Prepoſition* IN, which is underſtood. Sometimes *opus* hath the *Nominative,* by *Num* 3.; as, *Dux nobis opus eſt,* We ſtand in need of a Leader. It is elegantly joined with the *Participle Perfect*; as, *Conſulto, maturato, invento, facto,* &c. *opus eſt,* We muſt adviſe, make haſte, find out, do, &c.

noſtrum, veſtrum, ut,
[b] *Tuum* [a] *eſt id procurare.*

R E G. II.

24* MISEREOR, *miſereſco*, et *ſatago*, regunt Genitivum : ut,
[a] *Miſerere* [b] *civium tuorum.*
[a] *Satagit* [b] *rerum ſuarum.*

R E G. III.

25 EST pro *habeo* regit Dativum perſonæ : ut,
[a] *Eſt* [b] *mihi liber.*
[a] *Sunt* [b] *mihi libri.*

R E G. IV.

26 SUM pro *affero* regit duos Dativos, unum perſonæ, alterum rei : ut,
[a] *Eſt* [b] *mihi* [bb] *voluptati.*

R E G. V.

27 VERBUM ſignificans commodum vel incommodum regit Dativum : ut,
Fortuna [a] *favet* [b] *fortibus.*
[b] *Nemini* [a] *noceas.*

ſtrum, *are excepted* : *as*,
It is your Duty to manage that

R U L E II.

MISEREOR, miſereſco, *and* ſatago, *govern the Genitive* : *as*,
Take pity on your Countrymen
He hath his hands full at Home

R U L E III.

EST taken for habeo [to have] *governs the Dative of a Perſon* : *as*,
I have a Book.
I have Books.

R U L E IV.

SUM taken for affero [to bring] *governs two Datives, the one of a Perſon, and the other of a Thing* : *as*,
It is [*brings*] a Pleaſure to me

R U L E V.

A VERB ſignifying Advantage or Diſadvantage governs the Dative : *as*,
Fortune favours the Brave
Do hurt to no Man.

Num. 23. To theſe laſt may be added *Poſſeſſive* Nouns; ſuch as, *Regium, humanum, belluinum*, and the like; as, *Humanum eſt errare*, It is incident to Man to err.

NOTE, That to all theſe are underſtood, *Officium, opus, negotium*, or ſome other Word to be gathered from the Sentence; as, *Me Pompeii totum eſſe ſcis*, You know that I am wholly Pompey's, or in Pompey's intereſt, *Cic.* i. e. *amicum, fautorem*, or the like.

Num. 25. This is more elegant than *Habeo librum*, or *Habeo libros.*

So *Deſum* is uſed elegantly for *Careo*; as, *Deſunt mihi libri*, for *Careo libris*, I want Books.

Num. 26. NOTE, That other Verbs, ſuch as, *Do, duco, verto, tribuo, habeo, relinquo*, &c. may have two Datives; as, *Hoc tibi laudi datur*, You are praiſed for this; *Ne mihi vitio vertas*, Do not blame me.

To this may be referred ſuch Expreſſions as theſe: *Eſt mihi nomen Johanni*, My Name is John; which is more elegant than *Eſt mihi nomen Johannes* or *Jounnis.*

Num. 27. This is a very general *Rule*, and (when we ſignify a Thi

REG. VI.

VERBUM activè ſignificans regit Accuſativum: ut,

[a] *Ama* [b] *Deum.*
[a] *Revereare* [b] *parentes.*
* *Recordor, memini, reminiſcor* et *obliviſcor*, regunt Accuſativum vel Genitivum: ut,
[a] *Recordor* [b] *lectionis* vel [b] *lectionem.*
[a] *Obliviſcor* [b] *injuriæ* vel [b] *injuriam.*

RULE VI.

A VERB *ſignifying actively governs the Accuſative*: as,

Love God.
Reverence your Parents.

Recordor, memini, reminiſcor *and* obliviſcor, *govern the Accuſative or Genitive*: as,

I remember my Leſſon.
I forget an Injury.

---

to be acquired to any Perſon or Thing) almoſt common to all Verbs: but in a more particular Manner are comprehended under it.

1. To PROFIT or HURT: as, *Commodo, proficio, placeo, conſulo, noceo, officio.* But *lædo* and *offendo* govern the *Accuſ.*

2. To FAVOUR, to HELP, and their Contraries: as, *Faveo, annuo, arrideo, aſſentior, adſtipulor, gratulor, ignoſco, indulgeo, parco, adulor, plaudo, blandior, lenocinor, palpor, ſtudeo, ſupplico*, &c. Alſo, *Auxilior, adminiculor, ſubvenio, ſuccurro, patrocinor, medeor*: Alſo, *Derogo, detrabo, invideo*, &c. But *Juvo* has the *Accuſ.*

3. To COMMAND, OBEY, or RESIST: as, *Impero, præcipio, mando; Parco, ſervio, obedio, obſequor, obtempero, morem gero, morigeror, famulor; Pugno, repugno, certo, obſto, reluctor, renitor, reſiſto, adverſor, refragor*, &c. But *Jubeo* governs the *Accuſ.*

4. To THREATEN, or to be ANGRY with: as, *Minor, indignor, iraſcor, ſuccenſeo.*

5. To TRUST: as, *fido, confido, credo.*

6. Verbs compounded with SATIS, BENE, and MALE: as, *Satisfacio, benefacio, benedico, malefacio, maledico.*

7. The COMPOUNDS of the Verb SUM: as, *Adſum, proſum, obſum.*

8. Verbs compounded with theſe ten PREPOSITIONS, *Ad, ante, con, inter, ob, poſt, præ, ſub*, and *ſuper*: as, 1. *Adſto, accumbo, acquieſco, aſſideo, adhæreo, admoveo.* 2. *Antecello, anteeo, anteverto.* 3. *Conſopio, commiſceo, condono, commorior.* 4. *Illudo, immorior, inhæreo, inſideo, inhio, innitor, invigilo, incumbo.* 5. *Interpono, intervenio, interſum.* 6. *Obrepo, obtrecto, occumbo.* 7. *Poſtpono, poſthabeo.* 8. *Præeo, præſtat* for *excellit, præluceo.* 9. *Succedo, ſubmitto, ſubjicio.* 10. *Superſto, ſupervenio.*

Verbs ſignifying.

NOTE, 1. That TO, the Sign of the *Dative*, is frequently underſtood.

NOTE, 2. That TO is not always the Sign of the *Dative*: for, 1. Verbs of *Local Motion*, as, *Eo, venio, proficiſcor*; and, 2. Theſe Verbs, *Provoco, voco, invito, hortor, ſpecto, pertineo, attineo*, and ſuch like, have the *Accuſative*, with the Preposition *ad.*

Num. 29. NOTE, That *Neuter* and *Intranſitive Verbs* have ſometimes an *Accuſative* after them. 1. Of their *own* or the *like* Signification; as, *Vivere vitam, Gaudere gaudium, Sitire ſanguinem, Olere hircum.* 2. When taken in a *Metaphorical* Senſe; as, *Ardebat Alexin*, i. e. *Vehementer amabat.*

VERBA Activa alium unà cum Accusativo casum regentia.

30 * 1. VERBA accusandi, damnandi et absolvendi, cum Accusativo personæ, regunt etiam Genitivum criminis: ut,

[a] *Arguit* [b] *me* [bb] *furti.*

[b] *Meipsum* [bb] *inertiæ* [a] *condemno.*

[b] *Illum* [bb] *homicidii* [a] *absolvunt.*

31 * 2. VERBA comparandi, dandi, narrandi, et auferendi, regunt Dativum cum Accusativo: ut,

Active VERBS governing another Case together with the Accusative.

1. *VERBS of Accusing, Condemning, and Acquitting, with the Accusative of the Person, govern also the Genitive of the Crime: as,*

He accuses me of Theft.

I condemn myself of Laziness.

They acquit him of Manslaughter.

2. *VERBS of Comparing, Giving, Declaring, and Taking away, govern the Dative with the Accusative: as,*

Num. 30. 1. Verbs of ACCUSING are, *Accuso, ago, appello, arcesso, arguo, alligo, astringo, defero, incuso, insimulo, postulo,* &c.

2. Verbs of CONDEMNING are, *Damno, condemno, convinco,* &c.

3. Verbs of ABSOLVING are, *Solvo, absolvo, libero, purgo,* &c.

NOTE, 1. That the *Genitive* may be changed into the *Ablative*, either with or without a *Preposition*; as, *Purgo te hac culpa*, or *de hac culpa*, clear you of this Fault. *Eum de vi condemnavit*, He found him guilty of a Riot, *Cic.*

NOTE, 2. That the *Genitive*, properly speaking, is governed by some *Ablative* understood; such as, *Crimine, pœnâ, actione, causâ*: as, *Accusare furti*, i. e. *Crimine furti. Condemnare capitis*, i. e. *pœnâ capitis.*

NOTE, 3. That *Crimine, pœna, actione, capite, morte*, scarcely admit of a *Preposition.*

Num. 31. 1. To Verbs of COMPARING belong also Verbs of *preferring* or *postponing.*

2. To Verbs of GIVING belong Verbs of *Receiving, promising, paying, sending, bringing.*

3. To Verbs of DECLARING belong Verbs of *Explaining, shewing, denying,* &c.

4. Verbs of TAKING AWAY are, *Aufero, adimo, eripio, eximo, demo, furripio, detrabo, tollo, excutio, extorqueo, arceo, defendo,* &c.

NOTE, 1. That many of these Verbs govern the *Dative* by *Num.* 27.

NOTE, 2. That innumerable other Verbs may have the *Dative* with the *Accusative*, when, together with the *Thing done*, is also signified the *Person* or *Thing* to or for whom it is *done*; as, *Doce mihi filium*, Teach me my Son. *Cura mihi hanc rem*, Take care of this Affair for me.

NOTE, 3. That *Comparo, confero, compono*, have frequently the *Ablative* with *cum.*

[a] *Compare* [b] *Virgilium* [bb] *Homero.*

[b] *Suum* [bb] *cuique* [a] *tribuito.*

[a] *Narras* [b] *fabulam* [bb] *ſurdo.*

[a] *Eripuit* [b] *me* [bb] *morti.*

I compare *Virgil* to *Homer.*

Give every Man his own.

You tell a Story to a deaf Man.

He reſcued me from Death.

* 3. VERBA rogandi et docendi duos admittunt Accuſativos, priorem perſonæ, poſteriorem rei: ut,

3. *VERBS of Aſking and* 32 *Teaching admit of two Accuſatives, the firſt of a Perſon, and the ſecond of a Thing: as,*

[a] *Poſce* [b] *Deum* [bb] *veniam.*

[a] *Docuit* [b] *me* [bb] *Grammaticam.*

Beg Pardon of God.

He taught me Grammar.

ANNOTATIO.

* Quorum Activa duos Caſus regunt, eorum Paſſiva poſteriorem retinent: ut,

The Paſſives of ſuch Active 33 *Verbs as govern two Caſes, do ſtill retain the laſt of them: as,*

[a] *Accuſor* [b] *furti.*

Virgilius [a] *comparatur* [b] *Homero.*

[a] *Doceor* [b] *Grammaticam.*

I am accuſed of Theft.

Virgil is compared to *Homer.*

I am taught Grammar.

REG. VII.

RULE VII.

PRETIUM rei à quovis Verbo in Ablativo refertur: ut,

THE Price of a Thing is 34 *governed in the Ablative by any Verb: as,*

Num. 32. NOTE, 1. That among the Verbs that govern two *Accuſatives*, are alſo reckoned theſe following:

1. CELO; as, *Cela hanc rem uxorem*, Conceal this from your Wife, *Plaut.* But we can alſo ſay, *Celo te de hac re*, and *Celo tibi hanc rem.*

2. Verbs of CLOTHING; as, *Induit ſe calceos*, He put on his Shoes. But theſe have more commonly the *Ablative* of the Thing without a *Preſition*; as, *Veſtit ſe purpurâ*, He clothes himſelf with Purple. *Induo* and *uo* have frequently the *Perſon* in the *Dative*, and the *Thing* in the *Ablative*; as, *Thoracem ſibi induit*, He put on his Breaſtplate.

3. MONEO; as, *Id unum te moneo*, I put you in mind of this one Thing, it, unleſs it is ſome general Word, [as *Hoc, illud, id*, &c.] *Moneo, admoneo, commonefacio*, have either the *Genitive*; as, *Admoneo te officii*, I you in mind of your Duty; or the *Ablative* with *de*, as, *De hac re te ius admonui*, I have frequently warned you of this.

NOTE, 2. That Verbs of *Aſking* often change the *Accuſative* of the *Per*- into an *Ablative* with the *Preposition*; as, *Oro, exoro, peto, poſtulo hoc*, I entreat this of you. Some always; as, *Contendo, quæro, ſcitor, ſciſci- hoc a te.* Finally, ſome have the *Accuſative* of the *Perſon*, and the *Ab-ive* of the *Thing* with *de*; as, *Interrogo, conſulo, percontor te de hac re*

[a] *Emi librum* [b] *duobus aſſibus.*
I bought a Book for two Shillings.

[a] *Vendidit hic* [b] *aurum patriam.*
This Man ſold his Country for Gold.

Demoſthenes [a] *docuit* [b] *talento.*
Demoſthenes taught for a Talent.

35 * Excipiuntur hi Genitivi, *Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris*: ut,

[b] *Quanti* [a] *conſtitit?*
Aſſe [b] *et pluris.*

These Genitives, Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, *are excepted*: *as*,

How much coſt it?
A Shilling and more.

36 * VERBA æſtimandi, cum Accuſativo, regunt hujuſmodi Genitivos, *Magni, parvi, nihili*, &c.: ut,

[a] *Æſtimo te* [b] *magni.*

VERBS of valuing, with the Accuſative, govern ſuch Genitives as theſe, Magni, parvi, nihili, *&c.*: *as*,

I value you much.

REG. VIII.

RULE VIII.

37 * VERBA copiæ et inopiæ plerumque Ablativum regunt: ut,

[a] *Abundat* [b] *divitiis.*
[a] *Caret omni* [b] *culpa.*

VERBS of Plenty and Scarceneſs for the moſt part govern the Ablative: *as*,

He abounds in Riches.
He has no Fault.

38 * *Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, veſcor*, regunt Ablativum: ut,

[a] *Utitur* [b] *fraude.*
[a] *Abutitur* [b] *libris.*

Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, veſcor, *govern the Ablative*: *as*,

He uſes Deceit.
He abuſes Books.

Num. 35. Note, That if the *Subſtantive* be expreſſed, they are put in the *Ablative*; as, *Quanto pretio? Minore mercede.*

Num. 36. 1. Verbs of *Valuing* are *Æſtimo, pendo, facio, habeo, duco, puto, taxo.*

2. The reſt of the Genitives are, *Minoris, minimi, tanti, quanti, pluris, majoris, plurimi, maximi, nauci, flocci, pili, aſſis, teruncii, hujus*: As *Æqui* and *boni*, after *facio* and *conſulo.*

Note, 1. That we ſay alſo, *Æſtimo, magno, parvo*, ſupple *pretio.*

Note, 2. That *Alvarus* excludes *majoris*, as wanting Authority: but there is an Example of it to be found in *Phædrus*, II. 5. 35.

Multo majoris alapæ mecum veneunt.

Num. 37. Sometimes they have the *Genitive*; as, *Æget æris*, He wants Money, *Hor. Implentur veteris Bacchi*, They are filled with old Wine, *Virg.*

Note, That Verbs of *Loading* and *Unloading*, and the like, belong to this Rule; as, *Navis oneratur mercibus*, The Ship is loaded with Goods. *Levabo te hoc onere*, I will eaſe you of this Burden. *Liberavit nos metu*, He delivered us from Fear.

Num. 38. To theſe Verbs add, *Nitor, gaudeo, muto, dono, munero,*

§ 2. *Regimen Verborum Perſonalium.*

REG. IX.

VERBUM perſonale regit Dativum: ut,
[a] *Expedit* [b] *reipublicæ.*
[a] *Licet* [b] *nemini peccare.*

* EXCEP. 1. *Refert* et *Intereſt* Genitivum poſtulant: ut,

[a] *Refert* [b] *patris.*
[a] *Intereſt* [b] *omnium.*

* At *mea, tua, ſua, noſtra, veſtra,* ponuntur in Accuſativo plurali: ut,
Non [b] *mea* [a] *refert.*

* EXCEP. 2. Hæc quinque, *Miſeret, pœnitet, pudet, tædet,* et *piget,* regunt Accuſativum perſonæ, cum Genitivo rei: ut,
[a] *Miſeret* [b] *me* [bb] *tui.*
[a] *Pœnitet* [b] *me* [bb] *peccati.*
[a] *Tædet* [b] *me* [bb] *vitæ.*

* EXCEP. 3. Hæc quatuor, *Decet, delectat, juvat, oportet,* regunt Accuſativum perſonæ cum Infinitivo: ut,

§ 2. The Government of Impersonal Verbs.

RULE IX.

AN *Impersonal Verb* go-39
verns the Dative: as,
It is profitable for the State.
No Man is allowed to sin.

EXCEP. 1. Refert *and* 40
Intereſt *require the Genitive: as,*
It concerns my Father.
It is the Intereſt of all.

But mea, tua, ſua, noſtra, 41
veſtra, *are put in the Accuſative Plural: as,*
I am not concerned.

EXCEP. 2. *Theſe five,* Mi-42
ſeret, pœnitet, pudet, tædet, *and* piget, *govern the Accuſative of a Perſon, with the Genitive of a Thing: as,*
I pity you.
I repent of my Sin.
I am weary of my Life.

EXCEP. 3. *Theſe four,* De-43
cet, delectat, juvat, oportet, *govern the Accuſative of the Perſon with the Infinitive: as,*

munico, victito, beo, fido, impertior, dignor, naſcor, creor, afficio, conſto, proſequor, &c.

NOTE, That *Potior* ſometimes governs the *Genitive;* as, *Potiri hoſtium,* To get his enemies into his power. *Potiri rerum,* To have the chief Rule.

Num. 39. Such as theſe, *Accidit, contingit, evenit, conducit, expedit, lubet, libet, licet, placet, diſplicet, vacat, reſtat, præſtat, liquet, notet, dolet, ſufficit,* &c. together with the *Dative,* they have commonly an *Infinitive* after them, which is ſuppoſed to ſupply the Place of a *Nominative* before them.

Num. 42. NOTE, That this *Genitive* is frequently turned into the *Infinitive;* as, *Pœnitet me peccâſſe; Tædet me vivere;* and ſo they fall in with the following Rule.

a *Delectat* b *me* bb *ſtudere.*
Non a *decet* b *te* bb *rixari.*

§ 3. *REGIMEN Infinitivi, Participiorum, Gerundiorum, et Supinorum.*

REG. X.

44 UNUM Verbum regit aliud in Infinitivo: ut,
a *Cupio* b *diſcere.*

REG. XI.

45 PARTICIPIA, Gerundia, et Supina, regunt Caſum ſuorum Verborum: ut,
a *Amans* b *virtutem.*
a *Carens* b *fraude.*

1. *GERUNDIA.*

46 1. GERUNDIUM in DUM Nominativi Caſûs cum Verbo [*eſt*] regit Dativum: ut,
a *Vivendum eſt* b *mihi rectè.*
a *Moriendum eſt* b *omnibus.*

47 2. Gerundium in DI regitur à Subſtantivis vel Adjectivis: ut,
a *Tempus* b *legendi.*
a *Cupidus* b *diſcendi.*

I delight to ſtudy.
It does not become you to ſcold.

§ 3. The GOVERNMENT of the Infinitive, Participles, Gerunds and Supines.

RULE X.

ONE *Verb governs another in the Infinitive: as,*
I deſire to learn.

RULE XI.

PARTICIPLES, *Gerunds, and Supines, govern the Caſe of their own Verbs: as,*
Loving Virtue.
Wanting Guile.

1. GERUNDS.

1. THE *Gerund in* DUM *of the Nominative Caſe, with the Verb* [eſt] *governs the Dative: as,*
I muſt live well.
All muſt die.

2. *The Gerund in* DI *is governed by Subſtantives or Adjectives: as,*
Time of reading.
Deſirous to learn.

Num. 43. NOTE, That *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the *Subjunctive* Mood, UT being underſtood; as, *Oportet factas,* [You muſt do it,] for *Oportet te facere.*

Attinet, pertinet, and *ſpectat,* when uſed *impersonally,* (which rarely happens,) have the *Accuſative* with *ad,* as was obſerved above, *p.* 93.

Num. 44. Sometimes it is governed by *Adjectives;* as, *Cupidus et cupiens diſcere.*

NOTE, That the Verb *Cœpit* or *cœperunt* is ſometimes underſtood; as, *Omnes mihi invidere* (ſupply *cœperunt,*) They all began to envy me.

Num. 46. This *Dative* is frequently underſtood; as, *Eundem eſt,* (ſupply *nobis,*) We muſt go.

NOTE, That this *Gerund* always imports *Neceſſity,* and the *Dative* after it is the *Perſon* on whom the *Neceſſity* lies.

Num. 47. 1. The *Subſtantives* are ſuch as theſe, *Amor, cauſa, gratia, ſtudium, tempus, occaſio, ars, otium, voluntas, cupido,* &c.

2. The *Adjective* are generally *Verbals,* mentioned *Num.* 14.

3. Gerundium in DO Dativi Caſûs regitur ab Adjectivis utilitatem vel aptitudinem ſignificantibus: ut,

Charta [a] *utilis* [b] *ſcribendo.*

4. Gerundium in DUM Accuſativi Caſûs regitur à Præpoſitionibus *ad* vel *inter*: ut,

Promptus [a] *ad* [b] *audiendum.*
Attentus [a] *inter* [b] *docendum.*

5. Gerundium in DO Ablativi Caſûs regitur à Præpoſitionibus *a, ab, de, e, ex,* vel *in*: ut,

Pœna [a] *à* [b] *peccando abſterret.*

* Vel ſine Præpoſitione, ut Ablativus Modi vel Cauſæ: ut,

Memoria [b] *excolendo* [a] *augetur.*
[a] *Defeſſus ſum* [b] *ambulando.*

6. Gerundia Accuſativum regentia vertuntur eleganter in Participia in DUS, quæ cum ſuis Subſtantivis in Genere, Numero, et Caſu, concordant: ut,

Petendum eſt pacem.
Tempus petendi pacem.

3. *The Gerund in DO of* 48
the Dative Caſe is governed by Adjectives ſignifying Uſefulneſs or Fitneſs: as,

Paper uſeful for writing.

4. *The Gerund in DUM of* 49
the Accuſative Caſe is governed by the Prepoſitions ad *or* inter: *as,*

Ready to hear.
Attentive in Time of teaching.

5. *The Gerund in DO of* 50
the Ablative Caſe is governed by the Prepoſitions a, ab, de, e, ex, *or* in: *as,*

Puniſhment frightens from ſinning.

* *Or without a Prepoſi-* 51
tion, as the Ablative of Manner or Cauſe: as,

The Memory is improved by exerciſing it.
I am wearied with walking.

6. *Gerunds governing the* 52
Accuſative are elegantly turned into the Participles in DUS, which agree with their Subſtantives in Gender, Number, and Caſe: as,

Petenda eſt pax.
Tempus petendæ pacis.

Num. 48. The *Adjective* of *Fitneſs* is often underſtood; as, *Non eſt ſolvendo,* He is not able to pay, [ſupply *aptus* or *par.*]

Note, That ſometimes this *Gerund* is governed by a *Verb*; as, *Epidicum quærendo operam dabo,* I'll endeavour to find out *Epidicus,* Plaut.

Num. 49. Note, 1. That it hath ſometimes, but very rarely, the Prepoſitions *ob* and *ante*; as, *Ob abſolvendum munus,* For finiſhing your Taſk, *Virg. Ante domandum,* Before they are tamed or broken, *Virg.* ſpeaking of Horſes.

Note, 2. That what was the *Gerund* in *Dum* of the Nominative with the Verb *eſt, fuit,* &c. becomes the *Accuſative* with *eſſe*; as, *Omnibus moriendum eſſe novimus,* We know that all muſt die.

Ad petendum pacem.	Ad petendam pacem.
A petendo pacem.	A petenda pace.
SUPINA.	SUPINES.
53*1. Supinum in UM ponitur poſt Verbum Motûs: ut, [a] *Abiit* [b] *deambulatum.*	1. *The Supine in UM is put after a Verb of Motion: as,* He hath gone to walk.
54*2. Supinum in U ponitur poſt Nomen Adjectivum: ut, [a] *Facile* [b] *dictu.*	2. *The Supine in U is put after an Adjective Noun: as,* Eaſy to tell, *or* to be told.

Num. 52. Add to theſe the *Gerunds* of *Fungor*, *fruor*, and *potior*. Theſe *Participles in* DUS are commonly called GERUNDIVES.

NOTE, 1. That the *Subſtantive* muſt always be of the ſame Caſe that the *Gerund* was of.

NOTE, 2. That becauſe of its noiſy Sound, the *Gerund* in *di* is ſeldom changed into the *Genitive Plural*: But either the *Accuſative* is retained; as, *Studio patres veſtros videndi*, rather than *Patrum veſtrorum videndorum*: Or it is turned into the Genitive Plural, without changing the Gerund; as, *Patrum veſtrorum videndi ſtudio.* Thus *Valla* and *Farnabius*: But ſee my *Gram. maj. vol.* ii. *p.* 276.

Num. 53. The Supine in UM is elegantly uſed with the Verb *Eo*, when we ſignify that one ſets himſelf about the doing of a Thing; as, *In meam vitam tu laudem is quæſitum?* Are you going to advance your Reputation at the Hazard of my Life? *Ter.* And this is the Reaſon why this Supine, with *iri* taken perſonally, ſupplies the Place of the *Future* of the *Infin. Paſſ.*

Some general REMARKS *on the* Conſtruction *of* Participles, Gerunds, *and* Supines.

NOTE, 1. That *Participles*, *Gerunds*, and *Supines*, have a twofold *Conſtruction*; one, as they partake of the Nature of *Verbs*, by which they govern a certain Caſe after them; another, as they partake of the Nature of *Nouns*, and conſequently are ſubject to the ſame Rules with them. Thus,

1. A *Participle* is always an *Adjective* agreeing with its *Subſt.* by *Num.* 1.

2. A *Gerund* is a *Subſtantive*, and conſtrued as follows; (1.) That in *dum* of the *Nominative*, by *Num.* 2.; of the *Accuſ.* by *Num.* 68. (2.) That in *di* by *Num.* 11. or 14. (3.) That in *do* of the *Dat.* by *Num.* 16.; of the *Ablat.* by *Num.* 69. 71. or 55.

3. A *Supine* is alſo a *Subſtantive*. (1.) That in *um*, governed by *ad* underſtood, by *Num.* 68. (2.) That in *u*, governed by *in* underſtood, by *Num.* 71.

NOTE, 2. That the Preſent of the *Infinitive Active*, the *firſt Supine*, and the *Gerund* in *dum*, with the Prepoſition *ad*, are thus diſtinguiſhed: The *Supine* is uſed after *Verbs* of *Motion*; the *Infinitive* after any other *Verbs*; the *Gerund* in *dum*, with *ad*, after *Adjective* Nouns. But theſe laſt are frequently to be met with after *Verbs* of *Motion*; and Poets uſe alſo the *Infinitive* after *Adjectives*.

NOTE, 3. That the *Preſent* of the *Infinitive Paſſive*, and the *laſt Supine* are thus diſtinguiſhed: The *Supine* hath always an *Adjective* before it; which the *Infinitive* hath not, unleſs (as I ſaid) among Poets.

§ 4. *Conſtructio* CIRCUMSTANTIARUM.

1. *Cauſa, Modus, et Inſtrumentum.*

REG. XII.

*CAUSA, Modus, et Inſtrumentum, ponuntur in Ablativo: ut,

[a] *Palleo* [b] *metu.*
[a] *Fecit ſuo* [b] *more.*
[a] *Scribo* [b] *calamo.*

2. *Locus.*

REG. XIII.

* 1. NOMEN oppidi ponitur in Genitivo, cùm quæſtio fit per UBI: ut,

[a] *Vixit* [b] *Romæ.*

§ 4. The Conſtruction of Circumſtances. (*a*)

1. The Cauſe, Manner, and Inſtrument.

RULE XII.

THE *Cauſe, Manner,* 55
and Inſtrument, are put in the Ablative; as,

I am pale for Fear.
He did it after his own Way.
I write with a Pen.

2. Place.

RULE XIII.

THE *Name of a Town,* 56
is put in the Genitive, when the Queſtion is made by UBI, [Where]: *as,*

He lived at Rome.

(*a*) *Adjective* Nouns, but eſpecially *Verbs*, have frequently ſome CIRCUMSTANCES going along with them in Diſcourſe; the moſt conſiderable whereof, with Reſpect to Conſtruction, are theſe five: 1. The *Cauſe* or *Reaſon* why any Thing is done. 2. The *Way* or *Manner* how it is done. 3. The *Inſtrument* or *Thing* wherewith it is done. 4. The *Place* where; and 5. The *Time* when it is done.

Num. 55. NOTE, 1. That the *Cauſe* is known by the queſtion CUR? or QUARE? *Why, wherefore,* &c. The Manner by the Queſtion QUOMODO? *How?* and the *Inſtrument*, by the Queſtion QUOCUM? *Wherewith?*

NOTE, 2. That the *Prepoſition* is frequently expreſſed with the *Cauſe* and *Manner*; as, *Præ gaudio*, For Joy. *Propter amorem*, For Love. *Ob culpam*, For a Fault. *Cum ſummo labore*, With great Labour. *Per dedecus*, With Diſgrace. But the *Prepoſition* [CUM] is never added to the *Inſtrument*: For we cannot ſay, *Scribo cum calamo; cum oculis vidi.*

NOTE, 3. But here we muſt carefully diſtinguiſh between the *Inſtrument*, and what is called the *Ablativus Comitatûs*, or *Ablative* of *Concomitancy*, *e* ſignifying that ſomething was in *Company* with another; for then the *Prepoſition* [CUM] is generally expreſſed; as, *Ingreſſus eſt cum gladio*, He entered with a Sword, *i. e.* Having a Sword with him, *or* about him.

NOTE, 4. That to *Cauſe* ſome refer the *Matter* of which any Thing is made; as, *Clypeus æré fabricatus*, A Shield made of Braſs; but (except with the Poets) the *Prepoſition* is for the moſt part expreſſed.

NOTE, 5. That to *Manner* ſome refer the *Adjunct*, *i. e.* ſomething joined to another Thing; as, *Terra amœna floribus*, A Land pleaſant with Flowers. *Mons nive candidus*, A Hill white with Snow.

NOTE, 6. That to *Inſtrument* ſome refer *Conficior dolore, inediâ*, &c. *Proquor odio, amore*, &c. *Afficio te honore, contumeliâ*, &c. *Laceſſo verbis ſperis*, &c.

[a] *Mortuus eſt* [b] *Londini.*

He died at London.

57 * EXCEP. Si verò ſit tertiæ Declinationis, aut Pluralis Numeri, in Ablativo effertur: ut,

[a] *Habitat* [b] *Carthagine.*

[a] *Studuit* [b] *Pariſiis.*

EXCEP. But if it is of the third Declenſion, or of the Plural Number, it is expreſſed in the Ablative: as,

He dwells at Carthage.

He ſtudied at Paris.

58 * 2. Cùm quæſtio fit per QUO, nomen oppidi in Accuſativo regitur: ut,

[a] *Venit* [b] *Edinburgum.*

[a] *Profectus eſt* [b] *Athenas.*

2. When the Queſtion is made by QUO, [Whither], the Name of a Town is governed in the Accuſative: as,

He came to Edinburgh.

He went to Athens.

59 * 3. Si quæratur per UNDE vel QUA, nomen oppidi ponitur in Ablativo: ut,

[a] *Diſceſſit* [b] *Aberdoniâ.*

[b] *Laodiceâ iter* [a] *faciebat.*

3. If the Queſtion is made by UNDE, [Whence], or QUA, [By or through what Place], the Name of a Town is put in the Ablative: as,

He went from Aberdeen.

He went through Laodicea.

60 * 4. *Domus* et *Rus* eodem modo quo oppidorum nomina conſtruuntur: ut,

4. Domus and Rus are conſtrued the ſame Way as Names of Towns: as,

Manet Domi, He ſtays at Home. *Domum revertitur*, He returns Home. *Domo arceſſitus ſum*, I am called from Home. *Vivit rure* or *ruri. Abiit rus. Rediit rure.*

61 5. Nominibus regionum, provinciarum, et aliorum locorum, non dictis, præpoſitio ferè additur: ut,

5. To Names of Countries, Provinces, and other Places, not mentioned, the Prepoſition is generally added: as,

UBI? *Natus in Scotia, in Fifa, in urbe*, &c.

QUO? *Abiit in Scotiam, in Fifam, in* [vel *ad*] *urbem*, &c.

UNDE? *Rediit è Scotia, è Fifa, ex urbe*, &c.

QUA? *Tranſit per Scotiam, per Fifam, per urbem*, &c.

ANNOTATIO.

62 * Diſtantia unius loci ab alio ponitur in Accuſativo, interdum et in Ablativo: ut,

The Diſtance of one Place from another is put in the Accuſative, and ſometimes in the Ablative: as,

Glaſcua [a] *diſtat Edinburgo* Glaſgow is thirty Miles

Num. 56, &c. NOTE. 1. That the *Prepoſition* is frequently added to *Names* of *Towns*, (eſpecially when the Queſtion is *Quo? Unde?* or *Qua?*) and ſometimes omitted to *Names* of *Countries*, *Provinces*, &c.

triginta [b] *millia paſſuum.*

[b] *Iter* vel [b] *itinere unius diei.*

distant from Edinburgh.

One Day's Journey.

3. *Tempus.*

REG. XIV.

* 1. TEMPUS ponitur in Ablativo cùm quæſtio fit per QUANDO: ut,

[a] *Venit* [b] *horâ tertiâ.*

3. Time.

RULE XIV.

1. *TIME is put in the Ablative, when the Queſtion is made by* QUANDO, [When]: *as,*

He came at Three o'clock.

* 2. Cùm quæſtio fit per QUAMDIU, tempus ponitur in Accuſativo vel Ablativo, ſed ſæpius in Accuſativo: ut,

2. *When the Queſtion is made by* QUAMDIU, [How long], *Time is put in the Accuſative or Ablative, but oftener in the Accuſative: as,*

[a] *Manſit paucos* [b] *dies.*

Sex [b] *menſibus* [a] *abfuit.*

He ſtaid a few Days.

He was away ſix Months.

De Ablativo abſoluto.

Of the Ablative abſolute.

REG. XV.

* SUBSTANTIVUM cum Participio, quorum Caſus à nulla alia dictione pendet, ponuntur in Ablativo abſoluto: ut,

[a] *Sole* [b] *oriente fugiunt tenebræ.*

RULE XV.

A *SUBSTANTIVE with a Participle, whoſe Caſe depends upon no other Word, are put in the Ablative abſolute: as,*

The Sun riſing [or, while the Sun riſeth] Darkneſs flies away.

NOTE, 2. That *Humi*, *Militiæ*, and *Belli*, are alſo uſed in the Genitive when the Queſtion is made by *Ubi?* as, *Procumbit humi*, He lies down on the Ground. *Domi militiæque unà fuimus*, We were together both at home and abroad, *or* in Peace and War. *Ter. Bellique domi agitabatur*, Was managed both in Peace and War, *Sall.*

NOTE, 3. That when the Name of a *Town* is put in the *Genitive*, *in urbe* is underſtood; and therefore we cannot ſay, *Natus eſt Romæ urbis nobilis*, but *urbe nobili.*

‖ *Theſe Rules concerning Names of Towns may be thus expreſſed:*

The Name of a Town after { IN *or* AT / TO *or* UNTO / FROM *or* THROUGH } is put in the { *Gen. or Abl.* † / *Accuſative.* / *Ablative.* }

† *i. e.* When it is of the Third Declenſion, or of the Plural Number. But when AT ſignifies *about* or *near* a Place, we make uſe of the Prepoſition *ad*; as, *Bellum quod ad Trojam geſſerat*, Virg.

Num. 63. and 64. Theſe Two Rules may be thus expreſſed:

1. Nouns that denote a *preciſe* TERM of TIME are put in the *Ablative.*

2. Nouns that denote CONTINUANCE of TIME are put in the *Accuſative* or *Ablative.*

[a] *Opere* [b] *peracto ludemus.*

Our Work being finiſhed, [or, when our Work is finiſhed] we will play.

III. Conſtructio Vocum Indeclinabilium.

III. *The Conſtruction of Words indeclinable.*

I. *Adverbiorum.*

I. Of Adverbs.

66† 1. ADVERBIA junguntur Verbis, Participiis, Nominibus, et aliis Adverbiis: ut,

Bene ſcribit.
Fortiter pugnans.
Servus egregiè fidelis.
Satis bene.

1. *ADVERBS are joined to Verbs, Participles, Nouns, and other Adverbs: as,*

He writes well.
Fighting bravely.
A Servant remarkably faithful.
Well enough.

66*2. Adverbia quædam temporis, loci et quantitatis, regunt Genitivum: ut,

[a] *Pridie illius* [b] *diei.*
[a] *Ubique* [b] *gentium.*
[a] *Satis eſt* [b] *verborum.*

2. *Some Adverbs of Time, Place, and Quantity, govern the Genitive: as,*

The Day before that Day.
Every where.
There's enough of Words.

67*3. Quædam Adverbia de-

3. *Some Derivative Ad-*

Num 65. NOTE, 1. This *Ablative* is called ABSOLUTE or INDEPENDENT, becauſe it is not directed or determined by any other Word; for if the *Subſtantive* (which is principally to be regarded) hath a *Word* before that ſhould govern it, or a *Verb* coming after, to which it ſhould be a *Nominative*, then the Rule does not take place.

NOTE, 2. That *Having*, *Being*, or a Word ending in *ing*, are the ordinary *Signs* of this *Ablative*.

NOTE, 3. That (to prevent our miſtaking the true *Subſtantive*) when a *Participle perfect* is Engliſhed by HAVING, we are carefully to advert whether it is *Paſſive* or *Deponent*. If it is *Paſſive*, we are to change it into BEING, its true *Engliſh*. If it is *Deponent*, there needs no change, for HAVING is the proper *Engliſh* of it. The Uſe of this Note will appear by the following Example.

James having ſaid theſe Things, departed. } *Jacobus, hæc locutus, abiit.* Dep.
James, theſe things being ſaid, departed. } *Jacobus, his dictis, abiit.* Paſſ.
Having promiſed a great Reward. } *Pollicitus magnum mercedem.* Dep.
A great Reward being promiſed. } *Magnâ mercede promiſſâ.* Paſſ.

NOTE, 4. That when there is no *Participle* expreſſed in Latin, *exiſtente* [being] is underſtood; as, *Me puero*, I being a Boy. *Saturno Rege*, Saturn being King. *Civitate nondum liberâ*, The State not being yet free.

NOTE, 5. That the Participle may be reſolved into *Dum*, *cum*, *quando*, *ſi*, *poſtquam*, &c. [While, ſeeing, when, if, after,] with the *Verb*, either in *Engliſh* or *Latin*.

rivata regunt Caſum primitivorum : ut,

[b] *Omnium* [a] *elegantiſſimè loquitur.*

Vivere [a] *convenienter* [b] *naturæ.*

2. *Præpoſitionum.*

1. PRÆPOSITIONES *ad, apud, ante,* &c. Accuſativum regunt : ut,

[a] *Ad* [b] *patrem.*

2. Præpoſitiones *a, ab, abs,* &c. regunt Ablativum : ut,

[a] *A* [b] *patre.*

3. Præpoſitiones *In, ſub, ſuper,* et *ſubter,* regunt Accuſativum, cùm motus ad locum ſignificatur : ut,

Eo [a] *in* [b] *Scholam.*

[a] *Sub* [b] *mœnia tendit,* Virg.

Incidit [a] *ſuper* [b] *agmina,* Id.

Ducit [a] *ſubter* [b] *faſtigia tecti,* Id.

¶ At ſi motus vel quies in loco ſignificetur, *in* et *ſub* regunt Ablativum, *ſuper* et *ſubter* vel Accuſativum vel Ablativum : ut,

Sedeo vel *diſcurro* [a] *in* [b] *ſchola.*

Recubo vel ambulo [a] *ſub* [b] *umbra.*

Sedens [a] *ſuper* [b] *arma,* Virg.

[b] *Fronde* [a] *ſuper viridi,* Id.

Venæ [a] *ſubter* [b] *cutem diſperſæ,* Plin.

[a] *Subter* [b] *littore,* Catull.

4. ¶ Præpoſitio in compo

verbs govern the Caſe of their Primitives : as,

He ſpeaks the moſt elegantly of all.

To live agreeably to Nature.

2. Of Prepoſitions.

1. THE *Prepoſitions* ad, apud, ante, *&c. govern the Accuſative : as,* 68

To the Father.

2. *The Prepoſitions* a, ab, abs, *&c. govern the Ablative : as,* 69

From the Father.

3. *The Prepoſitions* In, ſub, ſuper, *and* ſubter, *govern the Accuſative, when Motion to a Place is ſignified : as,* 70

I go into the School.

He goes under the Walls.

It fell upon the Troops.

He brings [*him*] under the Roof of the Houſe.

¶ *But if Motion or Reſt in a Place be ſignified,* in *and* ſub *govern the Ablative,* ſuper *and* ſubter *either the Accuſative or Ablative : as,* 71

I ſit *or* run up and down in the School.

I lie *or* walk under the Shadow.

Sitting above the Arms.

Upon the green Graſs.

The Veins diſperſed under the Skin.

Beneath the Shore.

4. ¶ *A Prepoſition oft-times* 72

¶ The Prepoſitions, with the Caſes they govern, are contained in theſe Verſes :

1. Hæ quartum adſciſcunt caſum ſibi præpoſituræ ;
Ad, penes, adverſum, cis, citra, adverſus, et *extra,*

fitione eundem ſæpe caſum regit quem extra: ut,

[a] *Adeamus* [b] *ſcholam.*
[a] *Exeamus* [b] *ſchola.*

governs the *ſame Caſe in Compoſition that it does without it*: *as*,

Let us go to the School.
Let us go out of the School.

3. *Interjectionum.*

73* 1. INTERJECTIONES *O, heu*, et *proh*, regunt Vocativum, interdum Accuſativum: ut,

[a] *O formoſe* [b] *puer!*

3. Of Interjections.

1. THE *Interjections* O, heu, *and* proh, *govern the Vocative, and ſometimes the Accuſative*: *as*,

O fair Boy!

Ultra, poſt, præter, juxta, per, pone, ſecundum, Erga, apud, ante, ſecus, trans, ſupra, propter, et *intra*, Queis addas *contra, circum, circa, inter, ob, infra.*

2. Hæ ſextum poſcunt; *A, cum, tenus, abs, ab*, et *abſque*, Atque *palam, pro, præ, clam, de, e, ex, ſine, coram.*

3. *Sub, ſuper, in, ſubter*, quartum ſextumque requirunt.

NOTE, 1. That *Verſus* and *Ufque* are put after their Caſes; as, *Italiam verſus*, Towards Italy; *Oceanum uſque*, As far as the Ocean. But (as we have already obſerved, *p.* 75.) theſe are properly *Adverbs*, the *Preposition* AD being underſtood.

NOTE, 2. That *Tenus* is alſo put after its Caſe; as, *Mento tenus*, Up to the Chin.

NOTE, 3. That *Tenus* governs the *Genitive Plural*, 1. When the Word wants the *Singular*; as, *Cumarum tenus*, As far as [the Town] *Cumæ*. 2. When we ſpeak of things of which we have naturally but two; as *Crurum tenus*, Up to the Legs.

NOTE, 4. That *A* and *E* are put before *Conſonants*; *Ab* and *Ex* before *Vowels* and *Conſonants*; *Abs* before *t* and *q*.

NOTE, 5. That *ſubter* hath very rarely the *Ablative*, and only among Poets.

NOTE, 6. That in *Engliſh*, IN is commonly the Sign of the *Ablative*; INTO of the *Accuſative*.

NOTE, 7. IN for *erga, contra, per, ſupra, ad*, &c. governs the *Accuſ.*; as, *Amor in patriam. Quid ego in te commiſi? Creſcit in dies ſingulos. Imperium regum in proprios greges*, Horat. *Piſces in cœnam empti.* But IN for *inter* governs the *Ablative*; as, *In amicis habere*, Salluſt.

SUB for *circa* governs the *Accuſative*; as, *Sub cœnam.*

SUPER for *ultra, præter*, and *inter*, governs the *Accuſat.*; as, *Super Garamantas*, Virg. *Super gratiam ſuam*, Salluſt. *In ſermone ſuper cœnam nato*, Suet. For *de*, it governs the *Ablat.*; as, *Super hac re nimis*, Cic.

Num. 72. NOTE, That this Rule only takes place when the preposition may be diſſolved from the Verb, and put before the Caſe by itſelf; as, *Alloquor patrem*, i. e. *Loquor ad patrem.* And even then the Preposition is frequently repeated; as, *Exire e finibus ſuis*, Cæſ.

[a] *Heu* [b] *me miſerum!*
* 2. *Hei* et *Væ* regunt Dativum: ut,

[a] *Hei* [b] *mihi!*
[a] *Væ* [b] *vobis!*

4. *Conjunctionum.*

1. CONJUNCTIONES *et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel,* et quædam aliæ, connectunt ſimiles Caſus et Modos: ut,

Honora [b] *patrem* [a] *et* [b] *matrem.*
Nec [b] *ſcribit,* [a] *nec* [b] *legit.*

2. *Ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam, dummodo,* Subjunctivo Modo ferè ſemper adhærent: ut,

Lego [a] *ut* [b] *diſcam.*
[a] *Utinam* [b] *ſaperes.*

Ah Wretch that I am!
2. Hei *and* Væ *govern the* 74 *Dative: as,*

Ah me!
Wo to you!

4. Of Conjunctions.

1. THE *Conjunctions* et, 75 ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, *and ſome others, couple like Caſes and Moods: as,*

Honour your Father and Mother.
He neither writes nor reads.

2. Ut, quo, licet, ne, uti- 76 nam, *and* dummodo, *are for the moſt part joined with the Subjunctive Mood: as,*

I read that I may learn.
I wiſh you were wiſe.

Num. 75. To theſe add *Quam, niſi, præterquam, an,* and *Adverbs of likeneſs.* The Reaſon of this *Conſtruction* is, becauſe the Words ſo coupled depend all upon the ſame Word, which is expreſſed to one of them, and underſtood to the other.

Num. 76. To theſe add all *indefinite* Words, that is *Interrogatives,* whether *Nouns, Pronouns, Adverbs,* or *Conjunctions,* when taken in a *doubtful indefinite* Senſe; ſuch as, *Quis, uter, quantus,* &c. *Ubi, quo, unde,* &c. *An, quare, quamobrem, num, an, anne,* &c. [See *Page* 73. and 78.] They generally become *Indefinites* when another Word comes before them in the Sentence; ſuch as, *Scio, neſcio, video, intelligo, dubito,* and the like: as, *Scio eſt frater tuus? Neſcio ubi ſit. An venturus eſt? Dubito an venturus ſit.* NE, the *Adverb* of *Forbidding,* requires the *Imperative* or *Subjunctive*; *Ne time,* or *ne timeas.* See *Page* 55.

Cum, quam, quod, ſi, ni, ſin, niſi, etſi, etiamſi, priuſquam, ſimulac, quidem, quandoquidem, &c. are joined ſometimes with the *Indicative,* ſometimes with the *Subjunctive.*

SYNTAXEOS *Synopsis*;

SIVE,

Genuinæ et maximè neceſſariæ Conſtructionis Regulæ, ad quas cæteræ omnes reducuntur.

AXIOMATA.

I. OMNIS Oratio conſtat ex Nomine et Verbo.

II. Omnis Nominativus habet ſuum Verbum expreſſum vel ſuppreſſum.

III. Omne verbum finitum habet ſuum Nominativum expreſſum vel ſuppreſſum.

IV. Omne Adjectivum habet ſuum ſubſtantivum expreſſum vel ſuppreſſum.

Sex Caſuum Conſtructio.

I. OMNE Verbum finitum, expreſſum vel ſuppreſſum, concordat cum Nominativo, expreſſo vel ſuppreſſo, in Numero et Perſona: ut,

Puer legit.
[Homines] *aiunt.*
Romani [cœperunt] *feſtinare.*

A Summary of *SYNTAX*;

OR,

The true and moſt neceſſar
Rules of Conſtruction, t
which all the reſt are re
duced.

First PRINCIPLES.

I. *EVERY Speech* [*or* Sen
tence] *conſiſts of*
Noun and a Verb.

II. *Every Nominative ha*
its own Verb expreſſed or unde
ſtood.

III. *Every finite Verb ha*
its own Nominative expreſſed
underſtood.

IV. *Every Adjective ha*
its own Subſtantive expreſſed
underſtood.

The Conſtruction of the Caſes.

I. *EVERY Verb of the I*
nite Mood, expreſſed
underſtood, agrees with its N
minative, expreſſed or und
ſtood, in Number and Perſo
as,

The Boy reads.
They ſay.
The Romans made haſte

II. Omnis Genitivus regitur à Subſtantivo expreſſo vel ſuppreſſo: ut,

Liber fratris.

Eſt [officium] *patris.*

III. Dativus Acquiſitionis [*i. e. cui aliquid acquiritur vel adimitur*] cuivis Nomini aut Verbo expreſſo vel ſuppreſſo jungitur: ut,

Dedi Petro.

Cui dediſti?

[Dedi] *Petro.*

Utilis bello.

Non eſt [aptus] *ſolvendo.*

IV. Omnis Accuſativus regitur à Verbo activo, vel † Præpoſitione, expreſſis vel ſuppreſſis: ut,

Amo Deum;

et [amo] *parentes.*

Ad patrem.

Abiit [ad] *Londinum.*

¶ Aut Infinitivo præponitur expreſſus vel ſuppreſſus: ut,

Dicit ſe ſcribere.

Licet mihi [me] *eſſe bonum.*

V. Omnis Vocativus abſolutè ponitur, additâ nonnunquam Interjectione *O*: ut,

O Dave.

Heus, Syre.

VI. Omnis Ablativus regitur à † Præpoſitione expreſſa vel ſuppreſſa: ut,

A puero.

Exultat [præ] *gaudio.*

II. *Every Genitive is governed by a Subſtantive expreſſed or underſtood: as,*

The Book of my Brother.

It is the Duty of a Father.

III. *The Dative of Acquiſition* [i. e. to which any Thing is acquired, or from which it is taken] *is joined to any Noun or Verb expreſſed or underſtood: as,*

I gave it to Peter.

To whom did you give it?

To Peter.

Profitable for War.

He is not able to pay.

IV. *Every Accuſative is governed by an active Verb, or a † Prepoſition, expreſſed or underſtood: as,*

I love God;

and my Parents.

To the Father.

He hath gone to London.

¶ *Or is put before the Infinitive, expreſſed or underſtood: as,*

He ſays that he is writing.

I may be good.

V. *Every Vocative is placed abſolutely, the Interjection* O *being ſometimes added: as,*

O Davus.

Come hither, Syrus.

VI. *Every Ablative is governed by a † Prepoſition expreſſed or underſtood: as,*

From a Child.

He leaps for Joy.

† See *Page* 75. and *Larger Syntax, Page* 105. and 106.

APPENDIX.

I. OMNE Adjectivum concordat cum Subſtantivo expreſſo vel ſuppreſſo, in Genere, Numero, et Caſu: ut,

Bonus vir.

Triſte [negotium.]

II. Subſtantiva ſignificantia eandem rem conveniunt in Caſu: ut,

Dominus Deus.

III. Omnis Infinitivus regitur à Verbo vel Nomine expreſſis vel ſuppreſſis: ut,

Cupio diſcere.

Dignus amari.

Populus [cœpit] *mirari.*

I. *EVERY Adjective agrees with a Subſtantive, expreſſed or underſtood, in Gender, Number and Caſe: as,*

A good Man.

A ſad Thing.

II. *Subſtantives ſignifying the ſame Thing agree in Caſe: as,*

The Lord God.

III. *Every Infinitive is governed by a Verb or Noun expreſſed or underſtood: as,*

I deſire to learn.

Worthy to be loved.

The People wondered.

EXPLANATION.

ALL *Conſtruction* is either TRUE or APPARENT, or (as Grammarians expreſs it) JUST or FIGURATIVE.—TRUE *Conſtruction* is founded upon the eſſential properties of Words, and is almoſt the ſame in all Languages. APPARENT *Conſtruction* entirely depends upon *Cuſtom*, which, either for Elegance or Diſpatch, leaves out a great many Words otherwiſe neceſſary to make a Sentence perfectly full and grammatical.—The firſt is compriſed in theſe few *Fundamental Rules*, and more fully branched out in the *Larger Syntax*. The other is alſo interſperſed through the *Larger Syntax*, but diſtinguiſhed from that which is *True* by an *Aſteriſk*.

The *Caſes* mentioned in the *Rules* of the *Larger Syntax* immediately diſcover the *Rules* of this *Summary*, to which they reſpectively belong: thoſe that are *True*, without any *Ellipſis*; thoſe that are *Figurative*, by having their *Ellipſis* ſupplied as follows, as they are numbered in the Margin.

To Rule II. are reduced Num. 13. ſupple *negotium*. Num. 14. and 47. ſup. *de cauſa, gratia*, or *in re, negotio*. Num. 15. ſup. *& numero*. Num. 21. ſup. *de negotio*. Num. 22. and 23. ſup. *officium, negotium*, &c. Num. 24. ſup. 1. *ſat*, taken from the Verb. 2. *de cauſa*, &c. Num. 29. ſup. *memoriam, notitiam, verba*, &c. Num. 30. ſup. *de crimine, pœna*, &c. Num. 35. and 36. ſup. *pro re*, or *pretio æris*. Num. 40. ſup. *inter negotia*, and *res* [*fert*] *ſe ad negotia*. Num. 42. ſup. *res, negotium*, &c. Num. 56. ſup. *in urbe*. Num. 60. *domi*, ſup. *in ædibus*. Num. 66. theſe *Adverbs* ſeem to be taken for *Subſtantive Nouns*.

To RULE III. is reduced Num. 73. ſup. *malum eſt*, or theſe *Interjections* are uſed as *Subſtantives*.

To RULE IV. belong Num. 18. 53. and 62. ſup. *ad.* Num. 33. ſup. *quod ad.* Num. 41. *i. e. Eſt inter mea negotia; Refert* [or *res fert*] *ſe ad mea negotia*, &c. Num. 58. ſup. *ad* or *in.* Num. 64. ſup. *per.* Num. 73. ſup. *ſentio, lugeo*, &c.

To RULE VI. belong Num. 12. ſup. *e, ex, cum*, &c. Num. 19. ſup. *præ.* Num. 20 ſup. *de, e, ex, cum*, &c. Num. 21. ſup. *a, ab*, &c.

Num. 34. ſup. *pro.* Num. 37 38. ſup. *a, abs, de, e, ex.* Num. 51. and 55. ſup. *præ, cum, a, ab, e, ex*, &c. Num. 54. ſup. *in* or *de.* Num. 57. ſup. *in.* Num. 59. ſup. *a, ab. e, ex.* Num. 62. ſup. *in.* Num. 64. ſup. *in* or *pro.* Num. 65. ſup. *ſub, cum, a, ab.*

NOTE, 1. That under *Verbs* muſt alſo be comprehended *Participles, Gerunds*, and *Supines*, becauſe the general Signification of *Verb* is included in them.

NOTE, 2. That as a conſequence of this, a learned Grammarian ingeniouſly ſuppoſes, that the *Dative* and *Infinitive* are always governed by a *Verb*; and that when they ſeem to be governed by a *Noun*, the Participle *exiſtens* is underſtood: as, *Utilis* [*exiſtens*] *bello. Pollio præſidium* [*exiſtens*] *reis. Dignus* [*exiſtens*] *amari.*

NOTE, 3. That the *Vocative* is properly no Part of a Sentence, but the Caſe by which we excite one to hear or execute what we ſay. Therefore when the *Vocative* is put before the *Imperative*, as frequently happens, the *Nominative* TU or VOS is underſtood; and that even though theſe Words be already expreſſed in the *Vocative*: as, *Tu, Jacobe, lege*; i. *e. O tu Jacobe, tu lege.*

NOTE, 4. That the *Vocative* is ſufficient to itſelf, and does not neceſſarily require the *Interjection* O. See *Voſſius, lib.* vii. *cap.* 69. and *Sanctius, lib.* iv. *de Ellipſi Verb.* Audio *et* Narro.

CHAP. II.

Of Expoſition or Reſolution.

EXPOSITION or RESOLUTION is the unfolding of a *Sentence*, and placing all the Parts of it, whether expreſſed or underſtood, in their proper Order, that the true Senſe and Meaning of it may appear.

I. A SENTENCE is either *Simple* or *Compound.*

1. A SIMPLE *Sentence* is that which hath one *Finite Verb* in it.

2. A COMPOUND *Sentence* is that which hath two or more ſuch Verbs in it joined together by ſome *Couples.*

Theſe COUPLES are of four ſorts. 1. The *Relative* QUI. 2. Some *Comparative* Words; ſuch as, *tantus, quantus; talis, qualis; tam, quam*, &c. 3. *Indefinite* Words, [See *Page* 78. and 107.] 4. *Conjunctions.*

In a *Simple Sentence* there are two Things to be conſidered,—1. Its *Eſſential.* 2. Its *Accidental* Parts.

1. The *Eſſential* Parts of a *Sentence* are a *Nominative* and a *Verb.*

2. The *Accidental* Parts are of four Kinds.—1. Such as excite *Attention*; as, the *Vocative* and *exciting Particles*: as, *O, en, ecce, heus*, &c. 2. Such as ſerve to *introduce* a Sentence, or to ſhow its *dependence* upon what was ſaid before; as, *Jam, hactenus, quandoquidem, cum, dum, interea*, &c. 3. Such as *limit* the general and indefinite Signification either of the *Nominative* or *Verb*; and theſe are *Subſtantive Nouns.* 4. Such as *qualify* and *explain* them;

viz. Adjectives, Adverbs, and *Prepoſitions*, with their Caſes. Sometimes a Part of a *compound* Sentence ſupplies the Place of thoſe two laſt Kinds of Words.

II. The ORDER of Words in a Sentence is either *Natural* or *Artificial*.

1. NATURAL *Order* is when the Words of a Sentence naturally follow one after another, in the ſame Order with the Conceptions of our Minds.

2. ARTIFICIAL *Order* is when Words are ſo ranged as to render them moſt agreeable to the Ear; but ſo as the Senſe be not thereby obſcured.

III. A *Sentence* may be reſolved from the *Artificial* into the *Natural Order*, by the following Rules:

1. Take the *Vocative, Exciting*, and *Introductory* Words, where they are found.

2. The NOMINATIVE.

3. Words *limiting* or *explaining* it; *i. e.* Words agreeing with or governed by it, or by one another ſucceſſively (till you come to the *Verb*), where they are found.

4. The VERB.

5. Words *limiting* or *explaining* it, *&c.* where they are found, to the End of the Sentence.

6. Supply every where the Words that are underſtood.

7. If the Sentence is compound, take the Parts of it ſeverally as they depend upon one another, proceeding with each of them as above.

EXAMPLE.—*Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibique perſuade eſſe te quidem mihi cariſſimum; ſed multo fore cariorem, ſi talibus monumentis præceptiſque lætabere.* Cic. Off. lib. 3.

Farewell then my [Son] Cicero, and aſſure yourſelf that you are indeed very dear unto me; but ſhall be much dearer if you ſhall take delight in ſuch Writings and Inſtructions.

This *Compound Sentence* is reſolved into theſe five *Simple Sentences*:

1. *Igitur mi* [fili] *Cicero*, [tu] *vale*, 2. *et* [tu] *perſuade tibi te eſſe quidem cariſſimum* [filium] *mihi*; 3. *ſed* [tu perſuade tibi te] *fore cariorem* [filium mihi in] *multo* [negotio], 4. *ſi* [tu] *lætabere talibus monumentis*, 5. *et* [ſi tu lætabere talibus] *præceptis*.

NOTE, 1. That *Interrogative* Words ſtand always firſt in a *Sentence* unleſs a *Prepoſition* comes before them.

NOTE, 2. That *Negative* Words ſtand immediately before the *Verb*.

NOTE, 3. That *Relatives* are placed before the Word by which they are governed, unleſs it is a *Prepoſition*.

NOTE, 4. That the *Subjunctive* Mood is uſed in *Compound Sentences*.

NOTE, 5. That the *Parts* of a *Compound Sentence* are ſeparated from one another by theſe *Marks* called INTERPUNCTIONS. 1. Thoſe that are *ſmaller*, named *Clauſes*, by this Mark (,) called a *Comma*. 2. Thoſe that are *greater*, named *Members*, by this Mark (:) called *Colon*, or this (;) called a *Semicolon*. 3. When a Sentence is thrown in that hath little or no Connection with the reſt, it is incloſed within what we call a *Parentheſis*, marked thus ().

But when the *Sentence*, whether *Simple* or *Compound*, is fully ended, if it is a plain *Affirmation* or *Negation*, it is incloſed with this Mark (.) called a *Point*. If a Queſtion is aſked, with this Mark (?) called a *Point of Interrogation*. If *Wonder*, or ſome other *ſudden Paſſion*, is ſignified, with this Mark (!) called a *Point of Admiration*.

FINIS.

PRIMA

MORUM *et* PIETATIS

PRÆCEPTA,

VIZ.

I. *Dicta* ſeptem Sapientum è Græcis.
II. *Gulielmi Lilii* Monita Pædagogica.
III. *Dion. Catonis* Diſticha Moralia.
IV. *Joan. Sulpitii Verulani* de Moribus et Civilitate *Puerorum* Carmen.
V. *Rudimenta Pietatis;* ſive, Oratio Dominica, Symbolum Apoſtolicum, et Decalogus: *item,* Duorum Sacramentorum, *Baptiſmi* et *Sacræ Cœnæ Domini,* Inſtitutiones.

QUIBUS ACCESSIT

Summula CATECHISMI, ad piam Juniorum Educationem apprimè utilis;

ITEM

Præcipua Capita Chriſtianæ Religionis, deſumpta è Sacra Scriptura Veteris ac Novi Teſtamenti.

Timor Domini initium ſapientiæ eſt. PROV. i. 7.
Pietas ad omnia utilis eſt, promiſſionis habens et præſentis et futuræ vitæ. 1 TIM. iv. 8.

EDINBURGI:
Veneunt apud BELL & BRADFUTE, et J. DICKSON.
Anno Domini 1790.

DICTA SAPIENTUM è GRÆCIS,

D. ERASMO ROTEROD. *Interprete.*

Aurea dicta, puer, quæ sunt hîc, mente reconde:
Hinc poteris magnâ commoditate frui.

DICTA PERIANDRI CORINTHII.

OMNIBUS placeto.
Bona res quies.
Periculosa temeritas.
Semper voluptates sunt mortales:
Honores autem immortales.
Amicis adversâ fortunâ utentibus idem esto.
Lucrum turpe, res pessima.
Quicquid promiseris, facito.
Infortunium tuum celato, ne voluptate afficias inimicos.
Veritati adhæreto.
Age quæ justa sunt.
Violentiam oderis.
Principibus cede.
Voluptati tempera.
A jurejurando abstine.
Pietatem sectare.
Laudato honesta.
A vitiis abstine.
Beneficium repende.
Supplicibus misericors esto.
Liberos instrue.
Sapientum utere consuetudine.
Litem oderis.
Bonos in pretio habeto.
Arcanum cela.
Cede magnis.
Opportunitatem exspectato.
Mortalia cogita.
Ne prior injuriam facias.
Audi quæ ad te pertinent.
Probrum fugito.
Responde in tempore.
Ea facito quorum te non possit pœnitere.
Ne cui invideas.
Oculis moderare.
Quod justum est imitare.
Bene meritos honora.
Spem fove.
Calumniam oderis.
Affabilis esto.
Cùm errâris, muta consilium.
Concordiam sectare.
Diuturnam amicitiam custodi.
Magistratus metue.
Omnibus teipsum præbe.
Ne loquaris ad gratiam.
Ne tempori credideris.
Teipsum ne negligas.
Seniorem reverere.
Mortem oppete pro patria.
Ne quavis de re doleas.
Ex ingenuis liberos crea.
Sperato tanquam mortalis:
Parcito tanquam immortalis.
Ne efferaris gloriâ.
Largire cum utilitate.

Amicis utere.
Mortuum ne irrideto.

Dicta BIANTIS PRIENENSIS.

IN ſpeculo teipſum contemplare, et ſi formoſus apparebis, age quæ deceant formam: ſin deformis, quod in facie minus eſt, vel deeſt, id morum penſato pulchritudine.
Audito multa:
Loquere pauca.
De Numine ne malè loquaris:
Dilige amicos.
Conſule inculpatè.
Quid ſit autem auſculta.
Prius autem intellige; et deinde ad opus accede.
Ne ob divitias laudâris virum indignum.
Perſuaſione cape, non vi.
Compara in adoleſcentia quidem modeſtiam, in ſenectute verò prudentiam.

Dicta PITTACI MITYLENÆI.

QUÆ facturus es, ea ne dixeris; fruſtratus enim rideberis;
Depoſitum redde.
Deſidioſus ne eſto.
A familiaribus in minutis rebus læſus, feras.
Amico ne maledixeris.
Inimicum ne putes amicum.
Uxori dominari. [*Chriſtianè.*]
Quæ feceris parentibus, eadem à liberis exſpecta.
Inter amicos ne fueris judex.
Ne contende cum parentibus, etiamſi juſta dixeris.
Ne geras imperium, priuſquam parere didiceris.
Infortunatum ne irriſeris.
Audito libenter.
Ne lingua præcurrat mentem.
Ne feſtines loqui.
Noſce teipſum.
Legibus pare.
Voluptatem coërce.
Ne quid nimis.
Inimicitiam ſolve.
Ante omnia venerare Numen.
Parentes reverere.
Quæ fieri non poſſunt, cave concupiſcas.
Uxorem ducito ex æqualibus; ne, ſi ex ditioribus duxeris, dominos tibi pares, non affines.

Dicta CLEOBULI LINDII.

NE fis unquam elatus.
Domûs curam age.
Libros evolve.
Juſtè judicato.
Bonis benefacito.
Liberos tibi chariſſimos erudi.
A maledicentia temperato.
Suſpicionem abjicito.
Parentes patientiâ vince.
Beneficii accepti memento.
Inferiorem ne rejicias.
Aliena ne concupiſcas.
Ne teipſum præcipites in diſcrimen.

Res amici diligas, ac perinde ſerves ut tuas.
Lapis auri index, aurum hominum.
Quod oderis, alteri ne feceris.
Voto nihil pretioſius.
Ne cui miniteris; eſt enim muliebre.
Citiùs ad infortunatos amicos, quàm ad fortunatos proficiſcere.
Mendax calumniâ vitam corrumpit.
Mendaces odit quiſque prudens et ſapiens.

Dicta CHILONIS LACEDÆMONII.

NOſce teipſum.
Ne cui invideas mortalia.
Temperantiam exerce.
Turpia fuge.
Tempori parce.
Juſtè rem para.
Sapientiâ utere.
Multitudini place.
Oderis calumnias.
Ne quid ſuſpiceris.
Moribus probatis eſto.
Ne fueris oneroſus.

Dicta SOLONIS ATHENIENSIS.

DEum cole.
Parentes reverere.
Amicis ſuccurre.
Veritatem ſuſtineto.
Ne jurato.
Legibus pareto.
Cogita quod juſtum eſt.
Iracundiæ moderare.
Virtutem laudato.
Malos odio proſequitor.

Dicta THALETIS MILESII.

PRincipem honora.
Amicos probato.
Similis tui ſis.
Nemini promittito.
Quod adeſt boni conſulito.
A vitiis abſtineto.
Gloriam ſectare.
Vitæ curam age.
Pacem dilige.
Laudatus eſto apud omnes.
Suſurronem ex ædibus ejice.

GULIELMI LILII *Monita pædagogica;*

SIVE

Carmen de Moribus, ad ſuos Diſcipulos.

QUI mihi diſcipulus, puer, es, cupis atque doceri,
Huc ades, hæc animo concipe dicta tuo.
Manè citus lectum fuge, mollem diſcute ſomnum;
Templa petas ſupplex, et venerare Deum.
Attamen in primis facies ſit lota manuſque;
Sint nitidæ veſtes, comptaque cæſaries.
Deſidiam fugiens, cùm te ſchola noſtra vocârit,
Adſis; nulla pigræ ſit tibi cauſa moræ.

Me præceptorem cùm videris, ore saluta,
Et condiscipulos ordine quosque tuos.
Tu quoque fac sedeas, ubi te sedisse jubemus:
Inque loco, nisi sis jussus abire, mane.
Ac magis ut quisque est doctrinæ munere clarus,
Hoc magis is clarâ sede locandus erit.
Scalpellum, calami, atramentum, charta, libelli,
Sint semper studiis arma parata tuis.
Si quid dictabo, scribes; at singula rectè:
Nec macula, aut scriptis menda sit ulla tuis.
Sed tua nec laceris dictata aut carmina chartis
Mandes, quæ libris inseruisse decet.
Sæpe recognoscas tibi lecta, animoque revolvas:
Si dubites, nunc hos consule, nunc alios.
Qui dubitat, qui sæpe rogat, mea dicta tenebit;
Is qui nil dubitat, nil capit inde boni.
Disce, puer, quæso; noli dediscere quicquam:
Ne mens te insimulet conscia desidiæ.
Sisque animo attentus: quid enim docuisse juvabit,
Si mea non firmo pectore verba premas?
Nil tam difficile est, quod non solertia vincat:
Invigila, et parta est gloria militiæ.
Nam veluti flores tellus, nec semina profert,
Ni sit continuo victa labore manûs:
Sic puer, ingenium si non exercitet, ipsum
Tempus et amittit, spem simul ingenii.
Est etiam semper lex in sermone tenenda,
Ne nos offendat improba garrulitas.
Incumbens studio, submissâ voce loqueris;
Nobis dum reddis, voce canorus eris.
Et quæcunque mihi reddes, discantur ad unguem;
Singula et abjecto verbula redde libro.
Nec verbum quisquam dicturo suggerat ullum;
Quod puero exitium non mediocre parit.
Si quicquam rogito, sic respondere studebis,
Ut laudem dictis et mereare decus.
Non linguâ celeri nimis, aut laudabere tardâ;
Est virtus medium, quod tenuisse juvat.
Et quoties loqueris, memor esto loquare Latinè;
Et veluti scopulos barbara verba fuge.
Præterea socios, quoties te cunque rogabunt,
Instrue; et ignaros ad mea vota trahe.

Qui docet indoctos; licet indoctiſſimus eſſet,
Ipſe brevi reliquis doctior eſſe queat.
Sed tu nec ſtolidos imitabere Grammaticaſtros,
Ingens Romani dedecus eloquii:
Quorum tam fatuus nemo, aut tam barbarus ore eſt,
Quem non auctorem barbara turba probet.
Grammaticas rectè ſi vis cognoſcere leges,
Diſcere ſi cupias cultiùs ore loqui:
Addiſcas veterum clariſſima ſcripta virorum,
Et quos auctores turba Latina docet.
Nunc te Virgilius, nunc ipſe Terentius optat,
Nunc ſimul amplecti te Ciceronis opus:
Quos qui non didicit, nil præter ſomnia vidit,
Certat et in tenebris vivere Cimmeriis.
Sunt quos delectat (ſtudio virtutis honeſtæ
Poſthabito) nugis tempora conterere:
Sunt quibus eſt cordi, manibus, pedibuſve ſodales,
Aut alio quovis ſolicitare modo:
Eſt alius, qui ſe dum clarum ſanguine jactat,
Inſulſo reliquis improbat ore genus,
Te tam prava ſequi nolim veſtigia morum:
Ne tandem factis præmia digna feras.
Nil dabis, aut vendes, nil permutabis emeſve,
Ex damno alterius commoda nulla feres.
Inſuper et nummos, irritamenta malorum,
Mitte aliis; puerum nil niſi pura decent.
Clamor, rixa, joci, mendacia, furta, cachinni,
Sint procul à vobis; Martis et arma procul.
Nil penitus dices, quod turpe aut non ſit honeſtum:
Eſt vitæ ac pariter janua lingua necis.
Ingens crede nefas cuiquam maledicta referre,
Jurare aut magni nomina ſacra Dei.
Denique ſervabis res omnes atque libellos,
Et tecum, quoties iſque rediſque, feres.
Effuge vel cauſas faciunt quæcunque nocentem,
In quibus et nobis diſplicuiſſe potes.

DIONYSII CATONIS
Diſticha de Moribus, ad Filium:

Recognita de novo ad Metaphraſin Joſ. Scaligeri, *ejuſdemque* D. Eraſmi, P. Scriverii, *et* M. Zuer. Boxhornii *Notas et Caſtigationes, à* T. R.

In uſum Scholarum.

Illis quæ ceecinit Themis aut Thymbræus Apollo,
Non canit hicce catus deteriora Cato.

Præfatio cum breviſſimis Præceptis.

QUum animadverterem quàm plurimos homines graviter errare in via morum, ſuccurrendum et conſulendum eorum opinioni exiſtimavi, maximè ut gloriosè viverent, et honorem contingerent. Nunc te (fili chariſſime) docebo, quo pacto mores animi tui componas. Igitur præcepta mea ita legito, ut intelligas: Legere enim, et non intelligere, negligere eſt.

Taque Deo ſupplica.
Parentes ama.
Cognatos cole.
Magiſtrum metue.
Datum ſerva.
Foro te para.
Cum bonis ambula.
Ad conſilium ne acceſſeris, antequam voceris.
Mundus eſto.
Aluta libenter.
Majori cede.
Minori parce.
Rem tuam cuſtodi.
Verecundiam ſerva.
Diligentiam adhibe.
Libros lege.
Quæ legeris memento.
Familiam cura.
Blandus eſto.
Raſci ab re noli.
Feminem irriſeris.
Miſerum ne irriſeris.
Mutuum dato.
Cui des videto.
In judicium adeſto.
Conjugem ama.
Liberos erudi.
Patere legem quam ipſe tuleris.
Pauca in convivio loquere.
Convivare rarò.
Quod ſatis eſt dormi.
Jusjurandum ſerva.
Vino te tempora.
Pugna pro patria.
Nil temerè credideris.
Tu te conſule.
Meretricem fuge.
Literas diſce.
Nihil mentiri debes.
Bonis benefacito.
Maledicus ne eſto.
Exiſtimationem retine.
Æquum judica.
Parentes patientiâ vince.

Beneficii accepti memor esto.
Ad prætorium stato.
Consultus esto.
Utere virtute.
Iracundiam tempera.
Trocho lude.
Aleas fuge.
Nihil ex arbitrio virium feceri
Minorem te ne contempseris.
Aliena concupiscere noli.
Illud stude quod justum est.
Amorem libenter ferto.

DISTICHORUM de Moribus,
LIBER I.

Dei cultus præcipuus.

SI Deus est animus, nobis ut carmina dicunt,
Hic tibi præcipuè sit purâ mente colendus.

Somnolentia vitanda.

Plus vigila semper, nec somno deditus esto:
Nam diuturna quies vitiis alimenta ministrat.

Cohibenda lingua.

Virtutem primam esse puta compescere linguam;
Proximus ille Deo, qui scit ratione tacere.

Sibi ipsi conveniendum.

Sperne repugnando tibi tu contrarius esse:
Conveniet nulli qui secum dissidet ipse.

Nemo temerè culpandus.

Si vitam inspicias hominum, si denique mores,
Cùm culpas alios, nemo sine crimine vivit.

Utilitas divitiis anteponenda.

Quæ nocitura tenes, quamvis sint chara, relinque:
Utilitas opibus præponi tempore debet.

Mores pro tempore mutandi.

Et * levis et constans, ut res expostulat, esto:
Temporibus mores sapiens sine crimine mutat.

* *al.* Co
stans aut
vis, *repu*
nante met

Uxori non semper assentiendum.

Nil temerè uxori de servis crede querenti:
Sæpe etenim mulier, quem conjunx diligit, odit.

Instandum correctioni amici.

Cùmque mones aliquem, nec se velit ipse moneri,
Si tibi sit charus, noli desistere cœptis.

Stulti verbis non vincuntur.

Contra verbosos noli contendere verbis:
Sermo datur cunctis, animi sapientia paucis.

Amicus sibi quisque primus.

Dilige sic alios, ut sis tibi charus amicus,
Sic bonus esto bonis, ne te mala damna sequantur.

Rumores ſpargere vetitum.

Rumores fuge, ne incipias novus auctor haberi:
Nam nulli tacuiſſe nocet, nocet eſſe locutum.

Fides aliena non promittenda.

Rem tibi promiſſam certò promittere noli:
Rara fides ideo eſt, quia multi multa loquuntur.

Judex quiſque ſit ſui.

Cùm te aliquis laudat, judex tuus eſſe memento:
Plus aliis de te, quàm tu tibi credere noli.

Beneficiorum ratio.

Officium alterius multis narrare memento:
Atque aliis cùm tu benefeceris, ipſe ſileto.

Senio bene geſta referenda.

Multorum cùm facta ſenex et dicta recenſes,
Fac tibi ſuccurrant, juvenis quæ feceris ipſe.

Suſpicionis labes.

Ne cures ſi quis tacito ſermone loquatur:
Conſcius ipſe ſibi de ſe putat omnia dici.

In proſperis de adverſis cogitandum.

Cùm fueris felix, quæ ſunt adverſa caveto:
Non eodem curſu reſpondent ultima primis.

Mors alterius non ſperanda.

Cùm dubia et fragilis ſit nobis vita tributa,
In morte alterius ſpem tu tibi ponere noli.

Animus in dono æſtimandus.

Exiguum munus cùm dat tibi pauper amicus,
Accipito placidè, plenè et laudare memento.

Paupertas toleranda.

Infantem nudum cùm te natura creârit,
Paupertatis onus patienter ferre memento.

Mors non formidanda.

Ne timeas illam, quæ vitæ eſt ultima finis:
Qui mortem metuit, quod vivit perdit id ipſum.

Amicorum ingratitudo fugienda.

Si tibi pro meritis nemo reſpondet amicus,
Incuſare Deum noli, ſed te ipſe coërce.

Frugalitas.

Ne tibi quid deſit, quæſitis utere parcè:
Utque quod eſt ſerves, ſemper tibi deeſſe putato.

Promiſſio iterata moleſta.

Quod præſtare potes, ne bis promiſeris ulli:
Ne ſis ventoſus, dum vis bonus ipſe videri.

Ars arte deludenda.

Qui ſimulat verbis, nec corde eſt fidus amicus:
Tu quoque fac ſimile; ſic ars deluditur arte.

Blandiloquentia suspecta.

Noli homines blando nimium sermone probare:
Fistula dulcè canit, volucrem dum decipit auceps.

Liberi artibus instruendi.

Cùm tibi sint nati, nec opes; tunc artibus illos
Instrue, quò possint inopem defendere vitam.

Res quomodo æstimandæ.

Quod vile est, carum; quod carum est, vile putato:
Sic tibi nec cupidus, nec avarus habeberis ulli.

Culpata non facianda.

Quæ culpare soles, ea tu ne feceris ipse:
Turpe est doctori cùm culpa redarguit ipsum.

Concedenda petenda.

Quod justum est petito, vel quod videatur honestum:
Nam stultum est petere id quod possit jure negari.

Nota ignotis non commutanda.

Ignotum tibi tu noli præponere notis:
Cognita judicio constant, incognita casu.

Dies quisque supremus putandus.

Cùm dubia incertis versetur vita periclis,
Pro lucro tibi pone diem * quocunque laboras.

* *al.* quicunque.

Obsecundandum amicis.

Vincere cùm possis, interdum cede sodali:
Obsequio quoniam dulces retinentur amici.

Amicitiæ mutua officia.

Ne dubites, cùm magna petes, impendere parva:
His etenim rebus conjungit gratia charos.

Amicitia rixas odit.

Litem inferre cave cum quo tibi gratia juncta est:
Ira odium generat, concordia nutrit amorem.

Castigatio sine ira.

Servorum ob culpam cùm te dolor urget in iram,
Ipse tibi moderare, tuis ut parcere possis.

Patientiâ vincendum.

Quem superare potes, interdum vince ferendo:
Maxima enim morum semper patientia virtus.

Quæsita sunt servanda

Conserva potiùs, quæ sunt jam parta labore:
Cùm labor in damno est, crescit mortalis egestas.

Consulendum sibi in primis.

Dapsilis interdum notis, et charus amicis,
Cum fueris felix, semper tibi proximus esto.

LIB. II. PRÆFATIO.

TElluris si fortè velis cognoscere cultus,
Virgilium legito. Quòd si magè nôsse laboras
Herbarum vires, Macer has tibi carmine dicet,
Corporis ut cunctos possis depellere morbos.
Si Romana cupis et civica noscere bella,
Lucanum quæras, qui Martis prœlia dixit.
Si quis amare velis, vel discere amare legendo,
Nasonem petito. Sin autem cura tibi hæc est,
Ut sapiens vivas, audi quæ discere possis,
Per quæ semotum vitiis traducitur ævum.
Ergo ades, et quæ sit sapientia disce legendo.

De omnibus bene merendum.

SI potes, ignotis etiam prodesse memento:
Utilius regno est meritis acquirere amicos.

Arcana Dei non scrutanda.

Mitte arcana Dei, cœlumque inquirere quid sit:
Cùm sis mortalis, quæ sunt mortalia cura.

Mortis timor gaudia vitæ pellit.

Linque metum lethi; nam stultum est tempore in omni,
Dum mortem metuis, amittere gaudia vitæ.

Iracundia cavenda.

Iratus de re incerta contendere noli:
Impedit ira animum ne possit cernere verum.

Expendendum ubi opus est.

Fac sumptum properè, cùm res desiderat ipsa:
Dandum etenim est aliquid, cùm tempus postulat aut res.

Fortuna modica tutior.

Quod nimium est fugito, parvo gaudere memento:
Tuta magè est puppis modico quæ flumine fertur.

Occulta vitia reticenda.

Quod pudeat socios prudens celare memento;
Ne plures culpent id, quod tibi displicet uni.

Occulta tandem revelantur.

Nolo putes pravos homines peccato lucrari:
Temporibus peccata latent, sed tempore * parent.

* *i. e.* apparent, *vulgo* patent, *contra metri legem.*

Imbecillitas virtute compensatur.

Corporis exigui vires contemnere noli:
Consilio pollet cui vim natura negavit.

Cedendum potiori ad tempus.

Cui sciêris non esse parem te, tempore cede:
Victorem à victo superari sæpe videmus.

Rixandum cum familiaribus non esse.

Adversus notum noli contendere verbis :
Lis minimis verbis interdum maxima creseit.

Fortuna non quærenda sorte.

Quid Deus intendat, noli perquirere sorte :
Quid statuat de te, sine te deliberat ipse.

Luxus vdium generat.

Invidiam nimio cultu vitare memento :
Quæ si non lædit, tamen hanc sufferre molestum est.

Animus non deponendus ob iniquum judicium.

Esto animo forti, cùm sis damnatus iniquè :
Nemo diu gaudet, qui judice vincit iniquo.

Reconciliatis lis non refricanda.

Litis præteritæ noli maledicta referre :
Post inimicitias iram meminisse malorum est.

Teipsum neque lauda neque culpa.

Nec te collaudes, nec te culpaveris ipse :
Hoc faciunt stulti, quos gloria vexat inanis.

Parsimonia.

Utere quæsitis parcè, cùm sumptus abundat :
Labitur exiguo, quod partum est tempore longo.

Supercilium non unquam deponendum.

Insipiens esto, cùm tempus postulat, aut res :
Stultitiam simulare loco, prudentia summa est.

Neque prodigus, neque avarus.

Luxuriam fugito, simul et vitare memento
Crimen avaritiæ ; nam sunt contraria famæ.

Loquaci parum credendum.

Noli tu quædam referenti credere semper :
Exigua iis tribuenda fides qui multa loquuntur.

Ebrius vinum non accusat.

Quæ * potu peccas, ignoscere tu tibi noli : * *al.* potu
Nam nullum crimen vini est, sed culpa bibentis.

Amicis consilia credenda.

Consilium arcanum tacito committe sodali :
Corporis auxilium medico committe fideli.

Successus malorum ne te offendat.

Indignos noli successus ferre molestè :
Indulget fortuna malis ut lædere possit.

Futuros casus prævidendos.

Prospice, qui veniunt, hos casus esse ferendos :
Nam læviùs lædit, quicquid prævidimus antè.

Animus in adversis spe fovendus.

Rebus in adversis animum submittere noli :
Spem retine ; spes una hominem nec morte relinquit.

Opportunitas cùm contingit tenenda.

Rem tibi quam noſcis aptam, dimittere noli:
Fronte capillatâ, poſt eſt occaſio calva.

Futura ex præteritis colligenda.

Quod ſequitur ſpecta, quodque imminet antè, videto:
Illum imitare Deum, qui partem ſpectat utramque.

Vitæ ratio habenda.

Fortiùs ut valeas, interdum parcior eſto:
Pauca voluptati debentur, plura ſaluti.

Multitudini cedendum.

Judicium populi nunquam contempſeris unus:
Ne nulli placeas, dum vis contemnere multos.

Valetudo curanda.

Sit tibi præcipuè, quod primum eſt, cura ſalutis:
Tempora ne culpes, cùm ſis tibi cauſa doloris.

Somnia non obſervanda.

Somnia ne cures: nam mens humana quod optat,
Dum vigilans ſperat, per ſomnum cernit id ipſum.

LIB. III. PRÆFATIO.

HOC quicunque voles carmen cognoſcere, lector,
Quum præcepta ferat quæ ſunt gratiſſima vitæ,
Commoda multa feres. Sin autem ſpreveris illud,
Non me ſcriptorem, ſed te neglexeris ipſe.

Dandam eſſe operam literis.

INſtrue præceptis animum, nec diſcere ceſſes:
Nam ſine doctrina vita eſt quaſi mortis imago.

Moribus captanda fama.

Fortunæ donis ſemper parere memento:
Non opibus bona fama datur, ſed moribus ipſis.

Recte agendo aliorum linguam ne timeas.

Cùm rectè vivas, ne cures verba malorum:
Arbitrii noſtri non eſt quod quiſque loquatur.

Amici crimen celandum.

Productus teſtis, ſalvo tamen antè pudore,
Quantumcunque potes, celato crimen amici.

Blandiloquentia ſuſpecta.

Sermones blandos blæſoſque cavere memento:
Simplicitas veri * ſana eſt, fraus ficta loquendi:

Ignava vita fugienda.

Segnitiem fugito, quæ vitæ ignavia fertur:
Nam cùm animus languet, conſumit inertia corpus.

Animus feſſus relaxandus

Interpone tuis interdum gaudia curis:
Ut poſſis animo quemvis ſufferre laborem.

* *Scal.* famę, i. e. *indicium*, *al.* norma.

Malo animo neminem reprehendas.

Alterius dictum, aut factum, ne carpseris unquam :
Exemplo simili ne te derideat alter.

Hæreditas augenda.

Quod tibi sors dederit tabulis suprema notato,
Augendo serva ; ne sis quem fama loquatur.

Senectus sit munifica.

Cùm tibi divitiæ superant in fine senectæ ;
Munificus facito vivas, non parcus amicis.

Verba attendenda, non os loquentis.

Utile consilium dominus ne despice servi,
Nullius sensum, si prodest, temperis unquam.

Præsenti utendum fortunâ.

Rebus et in censu si non est quod fuit antè,
Hac vivas contentus eo quod tempora præbent.

Uxor spe dotis non quærenda.

Uxorem fuge ne ducas sub nomine dotis :
Nec retinere velis, si cœperit esse molesta.

Alieno sapere exemplo.

Multorum disce exemplo quæ facta sequaris,
Quæ fugias : vita est nobis aliena magistra.

Nihil ultra vires.

Quod potes, id tentes ; operis ne pondere pressus
Succumbat labor, et frustra tentata relinquas.

Consentire videtur qui tacet.

Quod nôsti haud rectè factum, nolito silere :
Ne videare malos imitari velle tacendo.

Rigor favore temperandus.

Judicis auxilium sub iniqua lege rogato :
Ipsæ etiam leges cupiunt ut jure regantur.

Feras quæ tuâ culpâ pateris.

Quod meritò pateris, patienter ferre memento :
Cùmque reus tibi sis, ipsum te judice damna.

Multa legenda, sed cum judicio.

Multa legas facito : perlectis * perlege multa : * al. neglige.
Nam miranda canunt, sed non credenda, poëtæ.

Modestè in convivio loquendum.

Inter convivas fac sis sermone modestus :
Ne dicare loquax, dum vis urbanis haberi.

Iracundia uxoris non formidanda.

Conjugis iratæ nolito verba timere :
Nam lachrymis struit insidias, dum fœmina plorat.

Quæsitis utendum, non abutendum.

Utere quæsitis, sed ne videaris abuti :
Qui sua consumunt, cùm deest, aliena sequuntur.

Mors non formidanda.

Fac tibi proponas mortem non esse timendam :
Quæ bona si non est, finis tamen illa malorum est.

Uxor proba, si loquax, ferenda.

Uxoris linguam, si frugi est, ferre memento :
Namque malum est te nolle pati, hanc non posse tacere.

Pietas erga parentes.

Æquâ diligito charos pietate parentes :
Nec matrem offendas, dum vis bonus esse parenti.

LIB. IV. PRÆFATIO.

SEcuram quicunque cupis traducere vitam,
Nec vitiis hærere animum, quæ moribus obsunt ;
Hæc præcepta tibi semper relegenda memento :
Invenies aliquid quo * te nitare magistro.

* *al.* quo vitæ utare. *al.* tu te utare.

Divitiarum contemptus.

DEspice divitias, si vis animo esse beatus ;
Quas qui suspiciunt, mendicant semper avari.

Vivere secundum naturam optimum.

Commoda naturæ nullo tibi tempore deerunt,
Si contentus eo fueris quod postulat usus.

Res ratione regenda.

Cùm sis incautis, nec rem ratione gubernes,
Noli fortunam, quæ * nulla est, dicere cæcam.

* *al.* non est.

Amor pecuniæ ad usum.

Dilige * denarium, sed parcè dilige formam,
Quam nemo sanctus, nec honestus captat * habere.

* *al.* denarî.
* *al.* ab ære.

In valetudine ne opibus parcas.

Quum fueris locuples, corpus curare memento :
Æger dives habet nummos, * sed non habet ipsum.

* *al.* se.

Castigatio paterna ferenda.

Verbera cùm tuleris discens aliquando magistri,
Fer patris imperium, cùm verbis exit in iram.

Certa et utilia agenda.

Res age quæ prosunt : rursus vitare memento
In quibus error inest, nec spes est certa laboris.

Libenter donandum.

Quod donare potes, gratis * concede roganti :
Nam rectè fecisse bonis in parte * lucrosum est.

* *al.* ne vende.
* *al.* lucrorum.

Suspicio statim expendenda.

Quod tibi suspectum est, confestim discute quid sit :
Namque solent primò quæ sunt neglecta nocere.

Venus abstinentiâ cohibenda.

Cùm te detineat Veneris damnosa voluptas,
Indulgere gulæ noli, quæ ventris amica est.

Homo malus, fera pessima.

Cùm tibi proponas animalia cuncta timere,
Unum hominem tibi præcipio plus esse timendum.

Sapientia fortitudine præferenda.

Cùm tibi prævalidæ fuerint in corpore vires,
Fac sapias; sic tu poteris vir fortis haberi.

Amicus cordis medicus.

Auxilium à notis petito, si fortè laboras:
Nec quisquam melior medicus, quàm fidus amicus.

Sacrificium spiritus dejectus.

Cùm sis ipse nocens, moritur cur victima pro te?
Stultitia est morte alterius sperare salutem.

Amicus ex moribus deligendus.

Cùm tibi vel socium, vel fidum quæris amicum,
Non tibi fortuna est hominis, sed vita petenda.

Avaritia vitanda.

Utere quæsitis opibus; fuge nomen avari:
Quid tibi divitiæ prosunt, si pauper abundas?

Voluptas inimica famæ.

Si famam servare cupis, dum vivis, honestam;
Fac fugias animo, quæ sunt mala gaudia vitæ.

Senem etiam delirum ne irriseris.

Cùm sapias animo noli irridere senectam;
Nam quicunque senet, sensus puerilis in illo est.

Opes fluxæ, ars perpetua.

Disce aliquid; nam cùm subitò fortuna recessit,
Ars remanet, vitamque hominis non deserit unquam.

Mores ex verbis cogniti.

Perspicito tecum tacitus, quid quisque loquatur:
Sermo etenim mores et celat et indicat idem.

Ars usu juvanda.

Exerce studium, quamvis perceperis artem:
Ut cura ingenium, sic et manus adjuvat usum.

Vitæ contemptus.

Multùm ne cures venturi tempora fati:
Non metuit mortem qui scit contemnere vitam.

Discendum et docendum.

Disce, sed à doctis: indoctos ipse doceto:
Propaganda etenim rerum doctrina bonarum est.

Bibendi ratio.

Hoc bibe quod possis, si tu vis vivere sanus:
Morbi causa mali nimia est * quandoque voluptas.

* al. quicunque.

Ne damnes quod probaveris.

Laudâris quodcunque palàm, quodcunque probâris,
Hoc vide ne rursus levitatis crimine damnes.

Circumspectus utráque fortunâ esto.

Tranquillis rebus quæ sunt adversa * timeto : * *al.* caveto.
Rursus in adversis meliùs sperare memento.

Studio crescit sapientia.

Discere ne cesses ; curâ sapientia crescit :
Rara datur longo prudentia temporis usu.

Parcè laudandum.

Parcè laudato ; nam quem tu sæpe probâris,
Una dies, qualis fuerit, monstrabit amicus.

Discere non pudeat.

Ne pudeat, quæ nescièris, te velle doceri :
Scire aliquid laus est, * turpe est nil discere velle. * *al.* culpa.

Rebus utendum ad sobrietatem.

Cum Venere et Baccho lis est, sed juncta voluptas :
Quod blandum est animo complectere, sed fuge lites.

Tristibus et tacitis non fidendum.

Demissos animo, ac tacitos vitare memento :
Quâ flumen placidum est, forsan latet altiùs unda.

Sors sorti conferenda.

Cùm tibi displiceat rerum fortuna tuarum,
Alterius specta * quo sis discrimine pejor. * *al.* qui sis.

Ultra vires nihil aggrediendum.

Quod potes id tenta : nam littus carpere remis
Tutius est multò, quàm * velis tendere in altum. * *al.* velum.

Cum justo iniquè non contendendum.

Contra hominem justum pravè contendere noli :
Semper enim Deus injustas ulciscitur iras.

Fortuna utraque æquè ferenda.

Ereptis opibus noli tu flere querendo :
Sed gaude potiùs, * tibi si contingat habere. * *al.* si nil.

Ab amico quid ferendum.

Est jactura gravis, quæ sunt, amittere damnis :
Sunt quædam, quæ ferre decet patienter amicum.

Tempori non confidendum.

Tempora longa tibi noli promittere vitæ :
Quocunque ingrederis sequitur mors, corpus ut umbra.

Deus quibus placandus.

* Thure Deum placa ; vitulum sine crescat aratro : * *al.* Ture.
Ne credas placare Deum, dum cede litatur.

A potentioribus læsus dissimula.

Cede locum læsus, fortunæ cede potenti :
Lædere qui potuit, prodesse aliquando valebit.

Castiga teipsum.

Cùm quid peccâris, castiga te ipse subinde :
Vulnera dum sanas, dolor est medicina doloris.

Amicus mutatus non vituperandus.

Damnâris nunquam, post longum tempus, amicum :
Mutavit mores ; sed pignora primâ memento.

Beneficiis collatis attende.

Gratior officiis, quò sis magè charior, esto ;
Ne nomen subeas quod dicitur * officiperda. * al. officiperdæ

Suspicionem tolle.

Suspectus cave sis, ne sis miser omnibus horis :
Nam timidis et suspectis aptissima mors est.

Humanitas erga servos.

Cùm fueris famulos proprios mercatus in usus,
Ut servos dicas, homines tamen esse memento.

Occasionem rei commodæ ne prætermittas.

Quamprimùm rapienda tibi est occasio prima,
Ne rursus quæras, quæ jam neglexeris antè.

Non lætandum repentino obitu.

Morte repentinâ noli gaudere malorum :
Felices obeunt quorum sine crimine vita est.

Pauper simulatum vitet amicum.

Cùm tibi sit conjux, * ne res et fama laboret, * al. nec
Vitandum ducas inimicum nomen amici.

Junge studium.

Cùm tibi contigerit studio cognoscere multa ;
Fac discas multa, et vites * nil velle doceri. * al. non

Brevitas memoriæ amica.

Miraris verbis nudis me scribere versus ?
Hos brevitas sensûs fecit conjungere binos.

JOANNIS SULPITII Verulani,

De Moribus et Civilitate Puerorum,

Carmen.

QUos decet in vita mores servare docemus,
Virtuti ut studeas, literulisque simul.
Quæ te igitur moneo, miti, puer, indole serva ;
Præque tuis oculis hæc mea jussa tene.
Omnibus in rebus studeas precor esse modestus :
Sis avidus laudis, sit tibi cura boni.
Sis pius ac sanctus, nec non venerare parentes :
Et noceas nulli, surripiasque nihil.
Futilis et mendax nunquam, nec credulus esto :
Dedecus et metuas, et reverere bonos.
Improba pestiferi fugias commercia cœtûs.
Sic et honorus eris, sic eris ipse bonus.

Nec maledicta refer, nec promas turpia dictu :
Eſt ſtomachoſa quidem dicere turpe tibi.
egnitiem fugito, quæ vitæ commoda pellit :
Parce gulæ turpi, luxuriamque fuge.
Parce et avaritiæ ; bilem frenare memento,
Atque animi faſtus, invidiamque ſimul.
idus ſis audenſque bonis ; temerarius eſſe
Deſpice : non audax ſis, timiduſve nimis.
iſto verecundus : rectum te lectus habebit ;
Detege nec ſocium, nec tua membra, puer.
ec ſis difficilis nimium, nimiumque ſeverus ;
Sed bonus et blandus conſpiciare, puer.
ec penitus mutum, nec te decet eſſe loquacem :
Convenit ille toro, convenit iſte foro.
æc te ſervantem vitæ laus ſpeſque futuræ ;
Spernentem turpis pœnaque morſque manent.
unc faciles aures, animum quoque trade ſerenum ;
Morigerare mihi, mollia juſſa dabo.
t ſine labe toga, et facies ſit lota manuſque ;
Stiria nec naſo pendeat ulla tuo.
t nihil emineat, ſint et ſine ſordibus ungues ;
Sit coma, ſit turpi calceus abſque luto.
nguaque non rigeat, careant rubigine dentes :
Atque palam pudeat te fricuiſſe caput ;
primere et pulices, ſcabiemque urgere nocentem ;
Ne te ſordidulum, qui videt iſta, vocet.
u ſpuis, aut mungis nares, nutaſve, memento
Poſt tua concuſſum vertere terga caput.
ucorem haud tangas digitis, ſputumve reſorbas :
Panniculo naſum mungere nempe decet.
ructare cave, quin os in terga reflectas :
tringe os, et crepitum comprime, quæſo, puer.
nditiæque tibi placeant ; medio quoque cultu
Utere, ne turpis vel videare levis.
n ſum qui laudem ſummo te accumbere mane :
udice conveniens me dabit hora cibum.
c vos ante focum cœnas producite longas :
Eſſe decet vivas, vivere non ut edas.
ſis vinoſus, quamvis potâſſe Catonem
ama refert ; fugias ſumere vina mera.
nque cibus nimius, potus quoque, maxima pœna ;
orporis et vires ingeniique rapit.

Insternas mensam : nitidas imponito quadras,
Atque salem et Cererem, flumina, vina, dapes.
Deinde precare Deum, qui nobis cuncta benignè
Suggerit, ut sanctos det tibi mane cibos.
Atque, puer, jubeo, sedeas vel rarò, sed astans
Pocula porge celer, tolle, repone dapes.
Juraque convivas super, importare, minister
Effuge : nam turpis sæpe fit inde toga.
Quodque jubebit herus, facilis semperque subito ;
Quemque tibi dederit, tu tibi sume locum.
Et licet antiqui cubuissent pectore prono,
Te colla hæc ætas recta tenere jubet.
Et finito mensæ cubitis hærere potentes :
Tu tantùm faciles pone, repone manus.
Quodque vir egregius pavido tibi porrigit, illud
Sume lubens, grates aptaque verba refer.
Esto tribus digitis, magnos nec sumito morsus ;
Nec duplices offas mandere utrinque juvet.
Te vitare velim, cupidus ne ut lurco sonoras.
Contractes fauces : mandere rite decet.
Gausape non macules, aut pectus ; nec tibi mentum
Stillet ; sitve tibi ne manus uncta, cave.
Sæpe ora et digitos mappâ siccabis adeptâ ;
In quadra faciat nec tua palma moram.
Quod tibi vicinum fuerit, tu sume : sodali
Cede tuo, referat dum tamen ille manum.
Dumque in frusta secat, caveas sumpsisse recisa :
Lurco legit dulces absque rubore bolos.
Non, manibus gremio immissis, tibi vellicet unguis
Quod sumes : residens non agitato pedes.
Incidasque priùs quàm dens contundat ofellam :
Tingantur rursum ne tibi mosa, cave.
Ne lingas digitos, nec rodas turpiter ossa,
Aft ea cultello radere ritè potes.
Sive super mensam cortex cumuletur, et ipsa
Ossa, vel in quadram, præ pedibusve jace.
Nec digitis tenta, nec pinguia delige frusta :
Et quocunque manus, huc tibi lumen eat.
Nec socium torvè inspicias, quidve ederit ille
Advertas : gestus inspice sæpe tuos.
Pocula cùm sumes, tergat tibi mappa labella :
Si tergas manibus, non mihi charus eris.

Una manus ſumat pateram, ni hanc jactet in hoſtem
  * Theſeus, aut Beli ſint monumenta patris :
Hanc binis quòd ſi manibus captabis, id aptè
  Efficies : digitis pocula ſume tribus.
Ac teneas oculos, nec ſupra pocula fare :
  Plena aliquo vites ſit tibi bucca cibo.
Deme merum cyatho, multum ne fortè ſuperſit,
  Quod nolit ſocius ſumere fortè tuus.
Qui ſapit, extinguet multo cum fonte falernum,
  Et parco lympham diluet ille mero.
Haud facias binos hauſtus, nec feſſus anheles,
  Sibila nec labiis ſtridula prome tuis.
Nec citò ſorbebis, velut ovi lutea grati :
  Nec nimium tardâ ſume falerna morâ.
Unum, ſive duo, ad ſummum tria pocula ſumes :
  Si hunc numerum excedas, jam mihi potus eris.
Fac videas quodcunque bibes, modicumque pitiſſa :
  Crater, ſive calix, det tibi vina, brevis.
Os quoque tergebis ſemper poſt pocula : palmas
  Ablue, quum menſam deſeris, atque labra.
Denique jam grates pro donis reddito Chriſto,
  Qui æternas nobis præparat unus opes ;
Inflectenſque genu, jungens et brachia, PROSIT,
  Dicito : mox tolles ordine quæque ſuo.

* *Vid.* Ovid. Met. 12. v. 235. *et* Virg. Æn. 1. v. 733.

REGIMEN MENSÆ honorabile.

Nemo cibum capiat, donec Benedictio fiat.

Dum manducatis,
- Vultus hilares habea-
- Sal cultello capia-
- Quod edendum ſit, ne peta-
- Non niſi depoſitum capia-
- Rixas et murmura fugia-
- Manibus erectis ſedea-
- Mappam mundam tenea-
- Ne ſcalpatis cavea-
- Aliis partem tribua-
- Morſus non rejicia-
- Modicum ſed crebrò biba-
- Grates DEO per CHRISTUM refera-

tis.

Privetur menſâ, qui ſpreverit hæc documenta

RUDIMENTA PIETATIS.

In nomine Dei, Patris, Filii, et Spiritûs Sancti. Amen.

ORATIO DOMINICA, *Matth.* vi.

PATER noſter, qui es in cœlis, 1. Sanctificetur nomen tuum. 2. Veniat regnum tuum. 3. Fiat voluntas tua, quemadmodum in cœlo, ſic etiam in terra. 4. Panem noſtrum quotidianum da nobis hodie. 5. Et remitte nobis debita noſtra, ſicut et nos remittimus debitoribus noſtris. 6. Et ne nos inducas in tentationem, ſed libera nos à malo: quia tuum eſt regnum, et potentia, et gloria, in ſæcula. *Amen.*

SYMBOLUM APOSTOLICUM.

CREDO in Deum Patrem omnipotentem, Creatorem cœli et terræ: 2. Et in Ieſum Chriſtum, filium ejus unigenitum, Dominum noſtrum; 3. Qui conceptus eſt de Spiritu Sancto, natus ex Maria Virgine; 4. Paſſus ſub Pontio Pilato, crucifixus, mortuus, et ſepultus, deſcendit ad inferna; 5. Tertio die reſurrexit à mortuis, 6. Aſcendit ad cœlos, ſedet ad dextram Dei Patris omnipotentis; 7. Inde venturus eſt judicatum vivos et mortuos. 8. Credo in Spiritum Sanctum: 9. Credo ſanctam Eccleſiam catholicam; Sanctorum communionem; 10. Remiſſionem peccatorum; 11. Carnis reſurrectionem; 12. Et vitam æternam. *Amen.*

DECALOGUS, *ſive* LEX DEI.

Locutus eſt DEUS omnia verba hæc. Exod. xx.

EGO ſum Dominus Deus tuus, qui eduxi te ex Ægypto, è domo ſervitutis:

I. Non habebis deos alienos in conſpectu meo.

II. Ne ſculpas tibi ſimulacrum, nec ullam imaginem effingas eorum, quæ aut ſupra ſunt in cœlo, aut infra in terra, aut in aquis ſub terra: neque incurves te illis, neque colas ea. Ego enim ſum Dominus Deus tuus, fortis, zelotes, vindicans

peccata patrum in filios, idque in tertia et quarta progenie eorum qui oderunt me, et misericordiâ utens in millesimam eorum qui diligunt me, et observant præcepta mea.

III. Ne usurpes nomen Domini Dei tui temerè. Neque enim Dominus dimittet eum impunitum, qui nomen ejus vanè usurpaverit.

IV. Memento diem Sabbati sanctifices. Sex diebus operaberis, et facies omne opus tuum. At septimo die Sabbatum erit Domino Deo tuo. Non facies ullum opus, nec tu, nec filius tuus, nec filia tua, nec servus tuas, nec ancilla tua, nec jumentum tuum, nec advena qui est intra portas tuas. Nam sex diebus fecit Deus cœlum, terram, et mare, et quæcunque in iis sunt; requievit autem die septimo, ideoque benedixit diei Sabbati, et sanctificavit eum.

V. Honora patrem tuum, et matrem tuam, ut diu vivas in terra, quam tibi Dominus Deus tuus daturus est.

VI. Non occides.

VII. Non committes adulterium.

VIII. Non furaberis.

IX. Non dices contra proximum tuum falsum testimonium.

X. Non concupisces domum proximi tui, non concupisces uxorem proximi tui, nec servum ejus, nec ancillam, nec bovem, nec asinum, nec quicquam eorum quæ sunt proximi tui.

Summa Legis, *Matth.* xxii. 34.

Pharisæi, quum audivissent quòd IESUS silentium imposuisset Sadducæis, congregati sunt pariter: 35. Et interrogavit eum unus ex iis qui erat legis peritus, tentans eum, et dicens, 36. Præceptor, Quod præceptum maximum est in lege?

37. IESUS autem dixit illi, Ut diligas Dominum Deum tuum, ex toto corde tuo, et ex tota anima tua, et ex omni cogitatione tua. 38. Hoc est præceptum maximum et primum. 39. Secundum autem est simile illi: nempe, Ut diligas proximum tuum sicut teipsum.

40. Ex his duobus præceptis pendent Lex et Prophetæ.

Quot sunt Christianæ Ecclesiæ Sacramenta?

Duo.

Quæ sunt illa?

Baptismus et sacra Cœna Domini.

Institutio Baptismi.

Cujus hæc ſunt verba. Matth. xxviii. 19. Mar. xvi. 16.

ITE, et docete omnes gentes, baptizantes eos, *In nomine Patris, et Filii, et Spiritûs Sancti.* Qui crediderit, et baptizatus fuerit, ſervabitur: Qui non crediderit, condemnabitur. Et docete eos, ut cuſtodiant quicquid mandavi vobis: et ecce ego vobiſcum ſum omnibus diebus uſque ad conſummationem ſeculi.

Hæc promiſſio repetitur, cùm Scriptura Baptiſmum nominat lavacrum regenerationis, et ablutionem peccatorum. *Tit.* iii. 5. *Act.* xxii. 16.

Institutio Coenæ Domini.

Cujus hæc ſunt verba. 1 Cor. xi. 23.

EGO enim accepi à Domino noſtro id quod tradidi vobis: Quòd Dominus noſter Ieſus Chriſtus, eâ nocte quâ proditus eſt, accepit panem; et, gratiis actis, fregit, ac dixit, *Accipite, manducate, hoc eſt corpus meum, quod pro vobis frangitur: Hoc facite ad memoriam mei.* Itidem et poculum poſtquam cœnaſſet, dicendo, *Hoc poculum eſt novum illud fœdus per meum ſanguinem: Hoc facite, quotieſcunque biberitis, in mei recordationem.* Quotieſcunque enim ederitis panem hunc, et poculum hoc biberitis, mortem Domini annunciabitis, uſque quò venerit. Itaque quiſquis ederit panem hunc, vel biberit poculum, Domini indignè, reus eſt corporis et ſanguinis Domini. Probet autem quiſque ſeipſum, et ita de pane illo edat, et de poculo illo bibat. Nam qui edit et bibit indignè, damnationem ſibi ipſi edit et bibit, quia non decernit corpus Domini.

Hæc promiſſio à Paulo exprimitur, cùm inquit,

POculum gratiarum actionis quo gratias agimus, nonne communio eſt ſanguinis Chriſti? Panis quem frangimus, nonne communio eſt corporis Chriſti? Quoniam unus panis, unum corpus, multi ſumus. Nam omnes unius panis participes ſumus.

SUMMULA CATECHISMI.

Triplex Hominis Status:

1. In ſanctitate et ſanitate.
2. Sub peccato et morte.
3. Sub Chriſti gratia.

QUÆSTIO.

QUIS hominem creavit?

Reſponſio. DEUS.

Q. *Qualem creavit eum?*

R. Sanctum et ſanum, mundique dominum.

Q. *In quem uſum creatus eſt?*

R. Ut Deo inſerviret.

Q. *Quod ſervitii genus ab eo exigebat Deus?*

R. Legis ſuæ præſtationem.

Q. *Num in legis Dei præſtatione perſtitit?*

R. Nequaquam: ſed eam fœdè tranſgreſſus eſt.

Q. *Quæ hujus tranſgreſſionis pœna?*

R. Mors æterna, cùm animæ, tum corporis, et ipſi et poſteris.

Q. *Quomodo inde liberamur?*

R. Merâ Dei gratiâ in Chriſto Ieſu, abſque noſtris meritis.

Q. *Cujuſmodi perſona eſt Chriſtus?*

R. Verè Deus, veréque homo, in perſona una.

Q. *Quomodo nos liberavit?*

R. Morte ſuâ: mortem enim nobis debitam pro nobis ſubiit, noſque eripuit.

Q. *Num omnes liberantur per Chriſtum?*

R. Minimè, ſed ii tantùm qui fide eum amplectuntur.

Q. *Quid eſt fides?*

R. Cùm mihi perſuadeo Deum me omneſque Sanctos amare, nobiſque Chriſtum cum omnibus ſuis bonis gratis donare.

Q. *Recenſe ſummam tuæ fidei?*

R. Credo in Deum, Patrem, *&c.*

Q. *Quis operatur hunc fidem in nobis?*

R. Spiritus Sanctus per Verbum et Sacramenta.

Q. *Quomodo eam operatur per Verbum et Sacramenta?*

R. Aperit cor, ut Deo loquenti in Verbo et Sacramentis credamus.

Q. *Quid eſt Dei verbum?*

R. Quicquid veteris ac novi Teſtamenti libris continetur.

Q. *Verbi Dei quot partes?*

R. Duæ, Lex et Evangelium.

Q. *Quid eſt Lex?*

R. Doctrina Dei, debitum à nobis exigens, et quia non ſumus ſolvendo, damnans.

Q. *Quid Evangelium?*

R. Doctrina Christum cum omnibus suis bonis nobis offerens, debitumque nostrum ab eo solutum, nosque liberos esse proclamans.

Q. *Quid Sacramenta?*

R. Sigilla Dei, significantia et donantia nobis Christum cum omnibus suis bonis.

Q. *Quæ hæc Christi bona?*

R. Amor Dei, Spiritus Sanctus, unio nostri cum Christo: unde remissio peccatorum, sanatio naturæ, spiritualis nutritio, et vita æterna, promanant.

Q. *Quot sunt Novi Testamenti Sacramenta?*

R. Duo, Baptismus et Sacra Cœna.

Q. *Quid est Baptismus?*

R. Sacramentum insitionis nostræ in Christum, et ablutionis à peccatis.

Q. *Quid insitio nostri in Christum?*

R. Unio nostri cum Christo: unde manat remissio peccatorum et perpetua resipiscentia.

Q. *Baptismus quid juvat fidem?*

R. Testatur, ut aquâ corpus abluitur, sic, operante Spiritu Sancto, à peccatorum reatu et radice, per fidem in sanguine Christi, nos repurgari.

Q. *Quid est sacra Cœna?*

R. Sacramentum spiritualis nutritionis nostræ in Christo.

Q. *Cœna Domini quid juvat fidem?*

R. Testatur, ut pane et vino corpora nostra aluntur et augescunt; sic animas nostras corpore et sanguine Christi crucifixi ali et corroborari ad vitam æternam.

Q. *Corpore et sanguine Christi quomodo alimur?*

R. Dum fide percipimus, et Spiritûs Sancti, qui unà adest, vi, ea nobis applicamus.

Q. *Quando fide percipimus, et nobis applicamus corpus Christi crucifixi?*

R. Dum nobis persuademus Christi mortem et crucifixionem non minùs ad nos pertinere, quàm si ipsi nos pro peccatis nostris crucifixi essemus: Persuasio autem hæc est veræ fidei.

Q. *Vera fides quomodo dignoscitur?*

R. Per bona opera.

Q. *Quomodo cognoscuntur bona opera?*

R. Si Dei legi respondeant.

Q. *Recita Dei legem?*

R. Audi, Israel! Ego sum Dominus, *&c.*

Q. *Hæc lex de quibus te admonet?*

R. De officio meo erga Deum, et erga proximum.

Q. *Quid officio debes Deo?*

R. Supra omnes eum ut amem.

Q. *Quid debes proximo?*

R. Eum ut amem tanquam meipsum.

Q. *Potis es hæc præstare?*

R. Minimè. gentium; nam

tantisper dum hîc vivimus, habitat in nobis peccatum.

Q. *In Dei filiis quid hinc existit?*

R. Perennis pugna inter carnem et spiritum.

Q. *In hac pugna quomodo nobis versandum?*

R. Assiduè orandum, ut Deus peccata nobis remittat, imbecillitatemque sustentet.

Q. *Quomodo orandum?*

R. Ut nos docuit Christus, Pater noster, qui es, &c.

Q. *Qui tibi persuades, Deum donaturum quæ petis?*

R. Quia orare jussit, pollicitusque est, quicquid peterem in Christi nomine, se mihi largiturum.

Q. *Quid debes Deo pro tot beneficiis?*

R. Ut ei gratias agam, perpetuóque serviam.

Q. *Quomodo Deo serviendum?*

R. Ex verbi ipsius præscripto, ut jam dictum est.

PRÆCIPUA CAPITA CHRISTIANÆ RELIGIONIS,

Desumpta è Sacra Scriptura Veteris ac Novi Testamenti.

I. *De DEO.*

Joan. iv. 24. DEUS est Spiritus ——

Apoc. iv. 8. Sanctus, Sanctus, Sanctus, Dominus Deus omnipotens, qui fuit, qui est, et qui venturus est.

Psal. cxlvii. 5. Dominus noster est magnus, multarumque virium, et sapientia ejus est immensa.

Exod. xxxiv. 6. ——— Jehova, Jehova Deus, misericors et exorabilis, longanimis, et abundans benignitate et fide:

Vers. 7. Custodiens misericordiam millibus, condonans iniquitatem, transgressionem, et peccatum, et qui nullo pacto absolvet nocentem.

Deut. vi. 4. Jehova Deus noster est unus Jehova.

1 *Joan.* v. 7. Tres sunt qui testantur in cœlo, Pater, Sermo, et Spiritus Sanctus; et hi tres sunt unum.

II. *De creatione, lapsu, peccato, et miseriâ hominis.*

Gen. i. 26. ET Deus dixit, Faciamus hominem ad imaginem nostram, secundum similitudinem nostram.

Vers. 27. Itaque Deus creavit hominem ad imaginem suam, ad imaginem Dei creavit eum. ———

Eccl. vii. 29. Deus fecit hominem rectum. ——

Rom. v. 12. Peccatum intravit in mundum per unum hominem, et mors per peccatum; et ita mors pervasit ad omnes homines, quatenus omnes peccârunt.

Rom. iii. 23. Omnes peccaverunt, ac deficiuntur gloriâ Dei.

Pſal. li. 5. En formatùs ſum in iniquitate, et in peccato mater mea concepit me.

III. *De Redemptione generis humani per Ieſum Chriſtum.*

Joan. iii. 16. DEUS ſic amavit mundum, ut dederit Filium ſuum unigenitum, ut quiſquis credit in eum, non pereat, ſed habeat vitam æternam.

1 *Jo.* iv. 9. Amor Dei patuit erga nos in hoc, quòd Deus miſit Filium ſuum unigenitum in mundum, ut vivamus per eum.

V. 10. In hoc eſt amor, non quòd nos dilexerimus Deum, ſed quod ipſe dilexerit nos, et miſerit Filium ſuum, ut eſſet piaculum pro peccatis noſtris.

1 *Pet.* iii. 18. Chriſtus quoque paſſus eſt ſemel pro peccatis, juſtus pro injùſtis, ut adduceret nos ad Deum.

1 *Pet.* ii. 24. Qui ipſemet ſuſtulit peccata noſtra in ſuo corpore ſuper lignum, ut nos mortui peccatis, viveremus juſtitiæ; cujus vibicibus ſanati ſumus.

Tit. ii. 14. Qui dedit ſeipſum pro nobis, ut redimeret nos ab omni iniquitate, et purificaret ſibi ipſi populum peculiarem, accenſum ſtudio bonorum operum.

IV. *De iis quæ Deus à nobis exigit, ut ſalutem per Chriſtum conſequamur.*

Act. xvi. 30. DIxit, Domini, quid faciendum eſt mihi, ut ſim ſalvus?
Verſ. 31. Et illi dixerunt, Crede in Dominum Ieſum, et ſalvus eris.

Act. iii. 19. Reſipiſcite, et convertimini, ut peccata veſtra deleantur, cum tempora recreationis venient à conſpectu Domini.

Iſa. lv. 6. Quærite Jehovam dum poſſit inveniri; invocate eum dum eſt propinquus.

Verſ. 7. Improbus derelinquat viam ſuam, et vir iniquus cogitationes ſuas: revertaturque ad Jehovam, et miſerebitur illius; et ad Deum noſtrum, quia plurimum condonabit.

Luc. ix. 23. Si quis vult venire poſt me, ipſe abneget ſe, tollatque ſuam crucem quotidie, et ſequatur me.

Matth. xi. 28. Venite ad me omnes qui laboratis et onerati eſtis, et ego recreabo vos.

Verſ. 29. Attollite jugum meum in vos, et diſcite à me, quia mitis ſum et humilis corde; et invenietis requiem animabus veſtris.

Verſ. 30. Jugum enim meum eſt facile, et onus meum eſt leve.

Heb. v. 9. Perfectus factus eſt auctor ſalutis æternæ omnibus obedientibus ſibi.

Jo. xiv. 15. Si amatis me, ſervate præcepta mea.

Jo. xv. 14. Vos eſtis amici mei, ſi feceritis quæcunque ego præcipio vobis.

Tit. ii. 11. Gratia Dei, quæ ſalutem adfert, apparuit omnibus hominibus;

Verſ. 12. Erudiens nos, ut, abnegata impietate et mundanis cupiditatibus, vivamus ſobriè, juſtè, et piè, in hoc præſenti ſeculo.

Mic. vi. 8. Indicavit tibi, O homo! quid ſit bonum; et quid exigit Jehova à te, niſi ut æquum facias, et ames miſericordiam, et ambules ſubmiſsè cum Deo tuo?

Col. iii. 5. Mortificate igitur veſtra membra terreſtria; ſcortationem, impuritatem, libidinem, cupiditatem malam, et avaritiam, quæ eſt idololatria;

Verſ. 6. Propter quæ, ira Dei venit ſuper filios contumaces.

Vers. 8.———Deponite hæc omnia, iram, excandescentiam, malitiam, maledicentiam, obscœnitatem verborum ex ore vestro.

Vers. 9. Ne mentimini alii aliis.

Vers. 12. Induite igitur (ut electi Dei, sancti, amatique) viscera misericordiæ, benignitatem, submissionem animi, lenitatem, patientiam;

Vers. 13. Sufferentes alii alios, et condonantes alii aliis: si quis habet querelam adversus aliquem, quemadmodum Christus condonavit vobis, sic quoque vos facite.

Vers. 14. Super omnia autem induite charitatem, quæ est vinculum perfectionis.

1 *Thess.* iv. 11. Et ut studeatis esse quieti, et agere res vestras, et operari propriis manibus, sicut præcepimus vobis.

1 *Pet.* ii. 27. Timete Deum, honorate regem.

Rom. xiii. 1. Omnis anima esto subjecta potestatibus supereminentibus: nulla enim est potestas nisi à Deo: potestates quæ sunt, sunt ordinatæ à Deo.

Vers. 2. Itaque quisquis obsistit potestati, obsistit ordinationi Dei: qui autem obsistunt, accipient condemnationem sibi ipsis.

1 *Thess.* v. 12. Rogamus autem vos, fratres, ut agnoscatis eos qui laborant inter vos, et præsunt vobis in Domino, et admonent vos.

Vers. 13. Et faciatis eos maximi cum amore, propter opus ipsorum.

Heb. xiii. 17. Parete gubernatoribus vestris, et obsequimini: nam ii vigilant pro animabus vestris, tanquam reddituri rationem: ut faciant id cum gaudio, et non cum dolore; id enim est inutile vobis.

Col. iii. 18. Uxores, submittite vos viris vestris, ut convenit in Domino.

Vers. 19. Viri, diligite uxores, et ne estote amarulenti adversus eas.

Eph. vi. 1. Liberi, obedite parentibus vestris in Domino, id enim æquum est.

Vers. 4. Et vos, patres, ne provocate liberos vestros ad iram, sed educate eos in disciplina et admonitione Domini.

Col. iii. 22. Servi, obedite dominis vestris in omnibus secundum carnem, non serviendo ad oculum, ut captantes gratiam hominum, sed cum simplicitate cordis, timentes Deum.

Vers. 23. Ac quicquid facitis, agitote id ex animo, tanquam Domino, et non hominibus.

Col. iv. 1. Domini, præstate jus et æquum servis vestris, scientes vos quoque habere dominum in cœlis.

Matth. vii. 12. Quæcunque igitur volueritis ut homines faciant vobis, vos facite etiam ita eis.

Matth. xxiv. 13. Qui sustinuerit ad finem, is servabitur.

Gal. vi. 9. Ne defetiscamur rectè faciendo; nam debito tempore metemus, si non fatigemur.

Apoc. ii. 10. Esto fidelis usque ad mortem, et dabo tibi coronam vitæ.

V. *De necessitate hæc præstandi.*

Jo. iii. 36. QUI credit in Filium, habet vitam æternam; qui vero non credit Filio, non videbit vitam, sed ira Dei manet super eum.

Luc. xiii. 3. 5. Nisi resipiscatis, omnes similiter peribitis.

Ezek. xxxiii. 11. Sic ego vivam, inquit Dominus Jehova, non delector morte impii, sed ut impius recedat à via sua, et vivat. Recedite, recedite à malis viis vestris; cur enim moreremini?

Ezek. xviii. 30. Resipiscite, et avertite vos ab omnibus peccatis vestris; ita iniquitas non erit exitio vobis.

V. 31. Abjicite à vobis omnes transgressiones vestras, quibus transgressi

eſtis; et facite vobis cor novum, et ſpiritum novum; nam quare moreremini?

Verſ. 32. Non enim delector morte morientis, dicit Dominus Jehova; convertite igitur vos, et vivite.

Jo. iii. 3.—Niſi quis denuò natus fuerit, non poteſt videre regnum Dei.

Matth. xviii. 3. Niſi convertamini, et fiatis ut pueruli, non intrabitis in regnum cœlorum.

Luc. vi. 46. Quid verò vocatis me, Domine, Domine, et non facitis quæ dico?

Heb. xii. 14. Sectamini pacem cum omnibus, et ſanctimoniam, ſine qua nemo videbit Dominum.

1 *Cor.* vi. 9. An ignoratis injuſtos non eſſe poſſeſſuros regnum Dei? Ne errate, neque ſcortatores, nec idolatræ, nec adulteri, nec molles, nec prædicones.

Verſ. 10. Nec fures, nec avari, nec ebrioſi, nec conviciatores, nec rapaces, poſſidebunt regnum Dei.

Heb. x. 38.——Si quis ſe ſubtraxerit, non erit acceptus animo meo.

VI. *De modis obtinendi gratiam à Deo, viresque ad hæc facienda.*

Luc. xi. 9. PETITE, et dabitur vobis; quærite, et invenietis; pulſate, et aperietur vobis.

Verſ. 10. Quiſquis enim petit, accipit; et qui quærit, invenit; et aperietur pulſanti.

V. 13. Si vos, qui mali eſtis, ſciatis dare bona dona veſtris liberis, quanto magis Pater veſter cœleſtis dabit Sanctum Spiritum petentibus à ſe?

1 *Pet.* iii. 21. Cui rei conſimilis figura, nempe Baptiſmus, nunc quoque ſervat nos, non detractio ſordium corporis, ſed ſtipulatio bonæ conſcientiæ apud Deum, per reſurrectionem Ieſu Chriſti.

1 *Cor.* xi. 23. Dominus Ieſus, eâ nocte quâ proditus eſt, accepit panem:

Verſ. 24. Et gratiis actis, fregit, ac dixit, Accipite, comedite: hoc eſt meum corpus, quod frangitur pro vobis; hoc facite, ad memoriam mei.

Verſ. 25. Itidem accepit poculum poſtquam cœnaſſet, dicens, Hoc poculum eſt novum fœdus per meum ſanguinem; hoc facite, quoties biberitis, ad memoriam mei.

Verſ. 26. Quoties enim ederitis panem hunc, et biberitis poculum hoc, annunciatis mortem Domini donec veniat.

1 *Cor.* x. 16. Poculum benedictionis cui benedicimus, nonne eſt communio ſanguinis Chriſti? Panis quem frangimus, nonne eſt communio corporis Chriſti?

Pſal. cxix. 9. Quomodo puer purificabit ſemitam ſuam? obſervando eam ſecundum verbum tuum.

Verſ. 11. Recondidi ſermonem tuum in animo meo, ut non peccem in te.

V. 59. Recogitavi meos mores, et converti pedes meos ad tua teſtimonia.

V. 60. Feſtinavi, ac non cunctatus ſum, obſervare mandata tua.

Prov. iii. 5. Confide Jehova toto corde, neve innitere tuæ prudentiæ.

Verſ. 6. Agnoſce eum in omnibus viis tuis, et is dirigit ingreſſus tuos.

VII. *De quatuor ultimis;* viz. *de Morte et Judicio, Cœlo et Inferno.*

Heb. ix. 27. STatutum eſt omnibus hominibus ut ſemel moriantur, poſtea vero judicium.

Joan. v. 28. Hora venit, in qua omnes qui ſunt in monumentis ſuis, audient ejus vocem.

Verſ. 29. Et prodibunt; qui fecerint bona, in reſurrectionem vitæ; qui verò egerint mala, in reſurrectionem condemnationis.

2 *Cor.* v. 10. Comparendum eſt nobis omnibus ante tribunal Chriſti, ut unuſquiſque accipiat ea quæ fecerit in corpore, congruenter ad ea quæ fecerit, ſive bonum ſive malum.

Matth. xxv. 34. Tunc dicet Rex iis qui erunt ad dextram ejus, Adeſte, benedicti Patris mei, poſſidete regnum paratum vobis à jacto fundamento mundi.

Verſ. 41. Tunc dicet etiam iis qui erunt ad ſiniſtram, Faceſſite à me, execrati, in æternum ignem, paratum diabolo et angelis ejus.

Verſ. 46. Et iſti abibunt in æternum ſupplicium, juſti verò in æternam vitam.

2 *Theſſ.* i. 7. Dominus Ieſus revelabitur de cœlo cum potentibus angelis ſuis.

Verſ. 8. In flammante igne, ſumens ultionem de iis qui neſciunt Deum, neque obediunt Evangelio Domini noſtri Ieſu Chriſti.

Verſ. 9. Qui dabunt pœnas æterno exitio, à facie Domini, et à gloria potentiæ ejus: cum venerit, ut glorificetur in ſanctis ſuis, et ut ſit admirandus omnibus credentibus.

Two PRAYERS *to be taught unto Children at School, with a Form of bleſſing God before and after Meat.*

MORNING PRAYER.

O GOD! I praiſe thee for the Creation of the World, and for the Redemption of Mankind by the Lord Jeſus, and for thy many Favours beſtowed on me. Thou didſt ſafely take me from the Womb, and haſt ever ſince cared for me: Thou haſt, by thy Mercy, cauſed me to be born within thy Church, where I was early given to thee in Baptiſm: Thou haſt afforded me the Means of Grace, and called me to the Hope of Glory. But O moſt merciful Father! I, a poor and miſerable Sinner, conceived in Sin, and brought forth in Iniquity, have gone aſtray from thee. I have not cared to know thee, and to do thy Will; but have done my own Will, and followed my fooliſh and ſinful Inclinations, and do therefore deſerve thy Wrath and Curſe. O Lord! have Mercy upon me, turn me to thee, and grant me Repentance and Forgiveneſs of all my Sins, for Jeſus' Sake. Let it from henceforth become my chiefeſt Care to pleaſe thee, and to ſeek thy Kingdom and Righteouſneſs. Work in me a true Faith, a lively Hope, and a fervent Charity; make me humble, meek, patient, ſober, and juſt, and loving to all Men; ſubmiſſive and obedient to them that are over me, and well content and thankful in every Condition of Life. Grant that I may daily grow in knowing, loving, fearing, and obeying thee. Create in me a clean Heart, O God! and renew a right Spirit within me.

I thank thee, O Lord! for thy care of me this Night; watch over me this Day; keep me mindful that I am always in thy Sight, that I may be in thy Fear all the Day long: And grant that through the whole Courſe of my Life I may be holy and harmleſs in all Manner of Converſation, that when this ſhort and frail Life is at an End, I may be made Partaker of everlaſting Life, through the Merits of Jeſus Chriſt our Lord; in whoſe Name and Words I pray, *Our Father which art in Heaven*, &c.

Evening Prayer.

MOST gracious God! what ſhall I render unto thee for thy many and great Benefits beſtowed upon me? Though I have been an undutiful and diſobedient Servant unto thee, thou haſt continued thy Care and Kindneſs for me ever ſince I was born, and haſt preſerved me this Day: Let me never forget thy Goodneſs, but grant that thereby I may be led to Repentance and Amendment of Life. Preſerve me from every Thing that is diſpleaſing to thee, O Lord! keep me from curſing, ſwearing, and lying,—from Pride, Stubbornneſs, and Idleneſs. Work in me an utter Diſlike of all Uncleanneſs, of Gluttony and Drunkenneſs, of all Malice and Envy, of Striſe and Contention, of Deceit and Covetouſneſs. Give me Grace to deny all Ungodlineſs and Worldly Luſts, and to live godly, righteouſly, and ſoberly, in this preſent World. Cauſe me to underſtand and conſider the Laws and Life of Jeſus, that I may do his Will, and follow his Steps. Let never the Cares of this Life, nor the Love of Riches, nor evil Company, nor the corrupt Cuſtom of the World, withdraw me from the Obedience of thy Laws; but ſtrengthen and eſtabliſh me by thy Holy Spirit, that I may live and die thy faithful Servant.

O Lord! ſend thy Goſpel through the World: Pour out plenteouſly the Spirit of Truth, Holineſs, and Peace, on all People: Bleſs the Church and Kingdom: Preſerve the King, and all the Royal Family: Guide our Judges and Magiſtrates: Sanctify and aſſiſt the Miniſters of the Goſpel: Viſit all that are in Trouble, and ſanctify their Afflictions to them: Be gracious unto all my Kindred, Friends, and Neighbours; and bleſs and forgive all mine Enemies.

Lord! watch over me this Night, and keep me ever mindful that I am ſhortly to die and come to Judgment, that I may without Delay turn to thee, and paſs the Time of my ſojourning here in thy Fear. Good Lord! hear me, and grant theſe my Deſires, and what elſe thou knoweſt to be needful for me, for the ſake of Jeſus; in whoſe Name and Words I pray, *Our Father*, &c.

Grace *before Meat.*

O LORD, be merciful unto us, and pardon our Sins; ſanctify thee thy good Benefits, that we, by the ſober and thankful Uſe of them may be enabled for thy Service, through Jeſus Chriſt our Lord and Saviour. *Amen.*

Grace *after Meat.*

WE thank and praiſe thee, O Lord, the giver of all Good! who ha at this Time fed our Bodies: Stir up in us a greater Care for o Souls; and grant that our ſhort Lives, which are ſo carefully ſuſtained thy Bounty, may be ſpent in doing thy Will. Lead us ſafely through th vain and ſinful World, in which we are Pilgrims and Strangers; and length bring us to everlaſting Reſt, through Jeſus Chriſt. *Amen.*

FINIS.

B M

